



GWM WEY 03

Owner's Manual



Thank you for choosing the WEY vehicle.

The more familiar you become with your vehicle, the more you will like it and the better you will be able to use its features. Therefore, you are kindly required to: Read this manual carefully before using your vehicle. There are important tips about using your vehicle in this manual that will help you make the best use of your vehicle's technology. Additionally, you will get very useful information about driving safety, road safety and maintenance of your vehicle value.

We sincerely wish you a safe and happy journey!

31/10/2024

Overview

Contain instructions for use, explanation of symbol meanings, etc.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult your vehicle dealer.

Manual timeliness

All information provided in this manual is up to date as of the time of publication. However, due to continuous product improvement, the content contained in this manual will be updated from time to time, and you can consult the latest electronic manual through the multimedia display screen on the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle specifications, vehicles shown in the figure may differ from your vehicle.

The screen display information (including pictures, icons, text and so on) shown in the manual is only for instructions. Depending on the vehicle configuration, software version, themes and settings, the information displayed may be different in detail. Refer to the actual vehicle for specific information.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications

Now we can buy not only genuine parts, but also a variety of other non-genuine spare parts and accessories that are suitable for our vehicle. Using non-genuine spare parts and accessories may adversely affect vehicle safety, even if these products have been approved by the relevant national or regional authorities. We are unable to offer any warranty and do not assume any responsibility or liability for replacement and installation by using non-genuine spare parts and accessories.

It is forbidden to modify vehicles with non-genuine products. Modifications with non-genuine products may affect the operability, safety or durability of the vehicle, and even may violate government regulations. In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues arising from modification are not covered by warranty of quality.

It is forbidden to modify systems such as suspension, braking system and so on. Otherwise, the operation safety of the vehicle may be adversely affected.

It is forbidden to modify the fuse box of the vehicle. Otherwise, the electrical system may be adversely affected.

Modification in electronic components, software and circuits will affect their functions and normal operation of other related components, especially safety-related systems, thus affecting the operation safety of vehicles and increasing the risk of accidents or injuries. Therefore, please do not modify circuits, electronic components and software.

About symbols

WARNING

This indicates a warning.

Failure to observe these warnings may result in serious injury or death. Such warnings tell you what to do or what not to do so as to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.

CAUTION

This indicates a caution.

Failure to observe these cautions may result in damage to the vehicle or its equipment. Such cautions tell you what to do or what not to do so as to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and its equipment.

NOTICE

This indicates a reminder.

Such tips contain helpful information that may be of use to you.

(▷ Page X)

This symbol indicates that more details can be seen on this page.

Tips for safety

WARNING

General precautions for your driving:

- › Drive only when fully alert: the alcohol, drug, medicine or anesthetic will slow down driver's response time and affect judgment and coordination, which makes the vehicle get out of control and results in severe safety accidents.
- › Drive carefully: be sure to drive carefully. Always keep an eye on improper movements of other drivers or pedestrians on the road so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.
- › Concentrate on driving: be attentive when driving. Anything that distracts the driver's attention, such as adjusting control buttons, call up and answer a mobile phone or reading, may give rise to a crash accident and serious injury to you, passengers on the vehicle and other people.

WARNING

When getting out of the vehicle, do not leave children, pets or someone who needs help in the vehicle alone.

- › Because the children, pets or someone who needs help cannot get out of the vehicle and save themselves. The temperature in the vehicle may be too high or too low in different weather, which may cause the passengers or pets in the vehicle injury even death.
- › If the children or pets touch the key, the vehicle may move itself which is dangerous for yourselves and the vehicle, including starting the vehicle, releasing the parking brake, shifting gears, operating the doors and windows.

Declaration of conformity

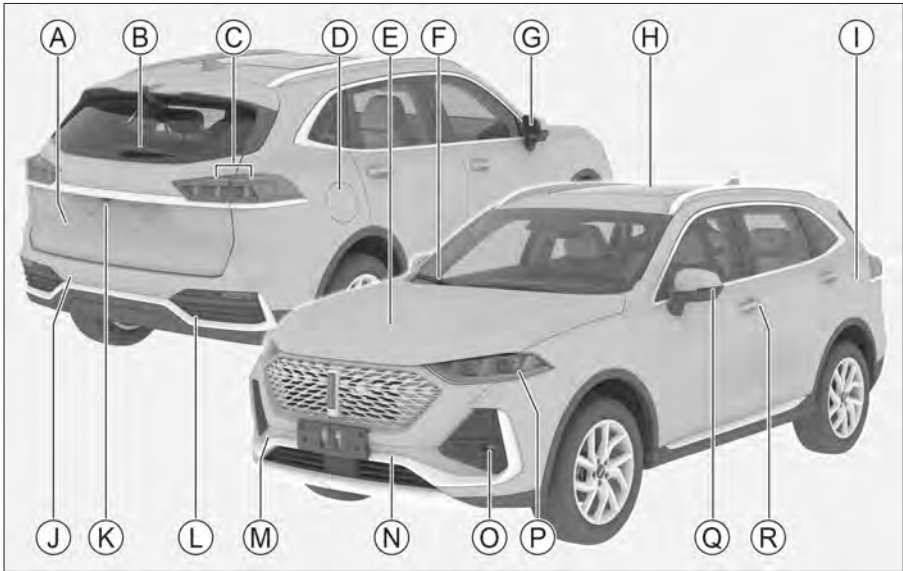


The radio frequency components in your vehicle comply with the requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://epctis.gwm.com.cn/#/common-Knowledge>

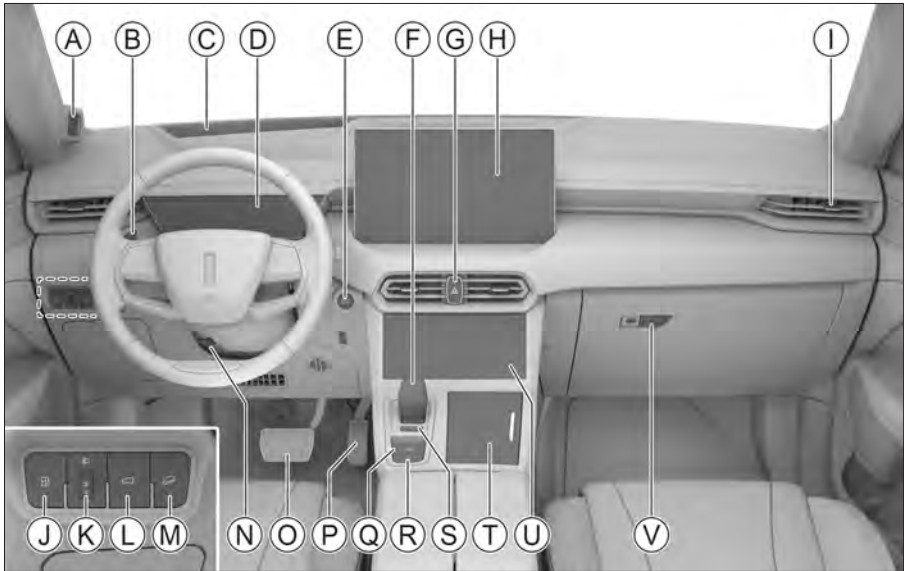
Appearance



9390C0EE934F

- Ⓐ Depending on configuration, it may include:
 - Electric tailgate 24
 - Electric hands-free tailgate 26
- Ⓑ Rear wiper 77
- Ⓒ Rear combination light 68
- Ⓓ Charging port cap 46
- Ⓔ Bonnet 40
- Ⓕ Front wiper 75
- Ⓖ Side mirror 61
- Ⓗ Sunroof 35
- Ⓛ Fuel tank door 42
- Ⓜ Rear collision-avoidance radar 138
- Ⓨ Rear view camera 139
- Ⓦ Rear trailer hook cover 282
- ⓓ Front trailer hook cover 281
- Ⓝ Front collision-avoidance radar 138
- Ⓟ Front fog light 69
- Ⓟ Front combination light 68
- Ⓠ Side indicator 70
- Ⓡ Door lock 21

Interior trim



F5FBBE5D48D3

- Ⓐ Intelligent monitoring system camera 179
- Ⓑ Paddle shifter 122
- Ⓒ Head up display system (HUD) 190
- Ⓓ Instrument panel 192
Instrument panel indicator lights 196
- Ⓔ Power supply switch 115
- Ⓕ Shift lever 122
- Ⓖ Emergency flasher switch 71
- Ⓗ Multimedia display screen 215
- Ⓘ A/C outlet 84
- Ⓙ Fuel tank door unlock button 42
- Ⓚ Light height adjustment knob 73
- Ⓛ Tailgate button 24
- Ⓜ Hill descent control button 181
- Ⓝ Steering wheel adjustment lever 64
- Ⓞ Brake pedal
- Ⓟ Accelerator pedal
- Ⓠ Electric parking button 118
- Ⓡ Auto vehicle hold button 119
- Ⓢ Parking gear button 123
- Ⓣ Front cup holder 88
- Ⓤ Auxiliary instrument panel display screen 79
- Ⓥ Glove box 87

Table of contents

1 Operation	This Chapter introduces the method for operating on-board vehicle equipment, such as keys, doors, windows and seats.
2 Driving	This Chapter introduces the driving information, such as vehicle start, gear shifting and instrument of the vehicle.
3 Audiovisual system	This Chapter introduces the Bluetooth telephone, system setting and other audio-visual system related information.
4 Safety	This Chapter introduces the functional equipment, such as anti-theft system and seat belts.
5 Emergency	This Chapter introduces the treatment methods for vehicle failures such as flat tyre and battery loss.
6 Maintenance	This Chapter introduces the routine inspection and regular maintenance of the vehicle.
7 Technical data	This Chapter introduces the vehicle parameters, identification number and other information.
8 Index	This Chapter introduces the alphabetical index in this manual.

Operation

Keys.....	16	Sunroof.....	35
Key information.....	16	Opening and closing the sunroof ..	35
Button introduction.....	16	Opening and closing the sunshade36
Battery replacement.....	17	Thermal protection function	37
Door locks.....	20	Anti-pinch function	37
Door lock settings	20	Delay function	37
Keyless lock and unlock	21	Easy closing.....	37
Locking and unlocking with key but-	tons	Automatic sunroof closing.....	38
Locking and unlocking with central	control buttons	Sunroof initialisation	38
Unlocking with the interior handle	Bonnet.....	40
Locking and unlocking with the me-	chanical key	Opening.....	40
Locking during emergencies	23	Closing the bonnet	40
Tailgate.....	24	Refuelling.....	42
Child safety lock	30	Refuelling method	42
Automatic resetting.....	30	Fuel information	43
Automatic unlock upon collision ...	30	Vehicle charging.....	45
Anti-misoperation lock.....	30	Charging management	45
Windows	31	Charging cable.....	45
Opening and closing vehicle win-	dows.....	Charging port.....	46
Thermal protection function	32	Regular charging (AC charging).....	47
Anti-pinch function	32	Fast charging (DC charging).....	50
Delay function	33	Seats	52
One-push raising function.....	33	Front seats	52
Window initialization	33	Rear seats	57
		Rearview mirrors	61
		Interior rearview mirror	61
		Side mirrors	61
		Steering wheel.....	64
		Adjustment method	64

Horn.....	64
Steering wheel heating function....	64
Roof rack.....	66
Roof rack.....	66
Light control.....	68
Light settings.....	68
Light control combination switch..	68
Emergency flasher.....	71
Daytime running light.....	72
Leaving light.....	72
Front fog lights auxiliary lighting...	72
Emergency braking warning.....	73
Light height adjustment.....	73
Interior lights.....	73
Wiper control.....	75
Front wipers.....	75
Rear wiper.....	77
Front wiper heating function.....	78
Front windshield washer nozzle heating function.....	78
Front wiper and washer settings...	78
A/C system.....	79
A/C settings.....	79
Cabin cleaning system.....	83
A/C outlets.....	84
Mobile phone wireless charging.....	85
Instructions for use.....	85
Interior equipment.....	87
Sun visor.....	87
Vanity mirror.....	87

Storage devices.....	87
Luggage cover.....	90
Power supply socket.....	91

Driving

Driving procedures.....	96
Before driving.....	96
Precautions for driving.....	97
Precautions for passengers.....	100
Parking the vehicle.....	100
Economic driving.....	101
Advice on driving in harsh environ- ments.....	102
Driving in foggy weather.....	102
Driving in the rain.....	102
Fording drive.....	103
In hot weather.....	103
Driving in cold weather.....	104
Advice on driving during run-in period	108
Tyres.....	108
Friction lining of brake pad.....	108
Hybrid vehicle.....	109
About hybrid vehicle.....	109
Energy recovery.....	113
Battery safety switch.....	113
Emergency cut-off point.....	114
Power supply switch.....	115
Power supply mode.....	115
Starting and shutting down the vehicle	116

Starting the vehicle	116	Intelligent integrated parking system	141
Shutting down the vehicle	117	Track-back reverse.....	144
Parking brake	118	Parking settings.....	145
Tips for safety.....	118	Intelligent driving assist information system	147
Electronic parking brake	118	Introduction to intelligent driving	147
Automatic transmission.....	121	Front assist.....	149
Introduction to gear positions	121	Side and rear assist	156
Gear shifting method	122	Lane assist	158
Crawl function	123	Adaptive cruise control system...	162
Start	123	Smart cruise control system	166
Stopping the vehicle	124	Lane change assist with turn signal	171
Driving mode.....	126	Traffic assist.....	173
Switching method	126	Tyre pressure monitoring system ..	175
Driving with a trailer	128	System introduction	175
Trailer instruction	128	Monitoring function.....	175
Driving instructions	128	Alarm function.....	176
Trailer hitch.....	131	Driver fatigue alert system	177
Semi-automatic tow hook.....	131	Introduction of fatigue driving reminder	177
Trailer power port.....	132	Instructions.....	177
Technical parameters.....	132	Functional limitations.....	178
Power steering mode.....	135	Intelligent monitoring system.....	179
Electric power assisted steering mode.....	135	Intelligent monitoring system	179
Sound prompt system	136	Hill descent control system (HDC)..	181
System introduction	136	Hill descent control system introduction	181
Instructions.....	136	Instructions.....	181
Parking assist system	137		
Safety prompt.....	137		
Collision avoidance radar	138		
Around view monitor (AVM)	139		

Driving assist system.....	182
Driving assist system safety tips.	182
Anti-lock brake system.....	182
Electronic braking force distribution system	183
Braking force assist system.....	183
Traction control system	183
Rollover prevention system.....	183
HHC (Hill-start Hold Control).....	183
Secondary collision mitigation system	183
Electronic power steering system	184
Electronic stability control system	184
Dynamic direction stability assist system	184
Emission control system.....	186
Reminder.....	186
Oxygen sensor.....	186
Catalytic converter.....	186
Turbocharger.....	187
Fuel evaporation control unit.....	187
Crankcase emission control unit	187
On-board diagnostic system	187
Gasoline particulate filter	188
Head up display system (HUD).....	190
System introduction	190
Instructions.....	190
Instrument panel	192
Instrument overview	192

Instrument panel control.....	194
Instrument panel indicator lights...	196
Instrument panel indicator lights	196
Power management system	206
System description	206
Information you should know.....	207

Audiovisual system

Safety prompt	210
Tips for safety	210
About the use	210
About the radio	210
About USB storage devices	210
About Bluetooth.....	211
Panel introduction.....	212
Steering wheel buttons.....	212
Power supply button	213
External devices	214
Display screen introduction	215
About multimedia display screen	215
Central display screen status bar	216
Function introduction	218
Shortcut panel.....	218
Permanent menu bar	218
Entertainment scenario	219
Driving scenario	220
Menu interface	225
Mobile phone interaction	225
System settings	226
Power assistant.....	230

My account	230
Mobile service	231
E-Manual	232
Skill tree.....	232
Voice assistant.....	233

Safety

Seat belts	236
Tips for safety.....	236
Wear the seat belt properly.....	237
Pretensioner seat belts.....	237
How to use the three-point seat belt	239
Airbags	240
Tips for safety.....	240
Airbag	242
Front airbags	243
Front passenger side airbag switch	245
Side airbag	246
Curtain airbags.....	246
Far-end airbag	247
Child restraint system	249
Safety instructions for child seat	249
Fixing points for child seat.....	250
Recommended child seat categories	252
Child seat installation method	253
Vehicle anti-theft system	257
About the system.....	257
System activation.....	257

Alarm trigger condition.....	257
Alarm cancellation	257
System off.....	258
VMDR biometric identification.....	259
Instructions.....	259
Alarm mode	260
Emergency shut-off system.....	261
Emergency shut-off system.....	261
Event data recorder.....	262
System introduction	262
Data reading.....	262
Data disclosure.....	262
Information security.....	264
Data privacy and protection.....	264

Emergency

On-board tools.....	268
Location of toolkit.....	268
Emergency tyre repair and inflation	269
Inflator and tyre repair fluid.....	269
Emergency tyre repair.....	270
Tyre inflation.....	271
In case of a vehicle accident.....	272
In case of a vehicle accident.....	272
In case of a fire accident to the vehicle	273
In case of vehicle immersion accident.....	274
Jump start	275
Symptoms of a drained vehicle	

battery	275
How to jumpstart the vehicle	275
Engine overheating	277
Engine overheating	277
Towing	279
Transporting with professional vehicles	279
In case of a vehicle breakdown ...	279
When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out	280
Tow hook	281
Tow rope	282
Service and rescue	283
Emergency call system	283

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance ..	288
Engine compartment	289
Safety tips	289
Fluid level	290
Engine oil	291
Brake fluid	292
Engine/drive motor coolant	293
Windscreen washer fluid	294
Radiator and fan	294
Battery	294
Safety labels and signs	295
High voltage warning label	295
Engine coolant warning label	296
Drive motor coolant warning label	296

Engine compartment warning label	296
Battery warning label	297
Part replacement	298
Fuse	298
Removal and installation of the instrument panel storage box	300
Wiper blades	300
Lamp maintenance	302
Vehicle maintenance	304
Tyre maintenance	304
Sunroof maintenance	306
Battery	307
Exterior maintenance	307
Interior maintenance	310
Anti-corrosion measures	313
Long-term storage of the vehicle	314
Environmental protection information	316
Power battery recovery	316
Disposal of batteries and electronic equipment	316
Vehicle recycling and scrapping ..	317

Technical data

Vehicle identification	320
Vehicle identification number	320
Engine number	321
Overall parameters	322
Basic parameters	322
Power parameters	322

Tyre specifications	323
Wheel parameters	323
Brake parameters	324
Fluid parameters.....	324

Index

Alphabetical index	328
--------------------------	-----

1

Operation

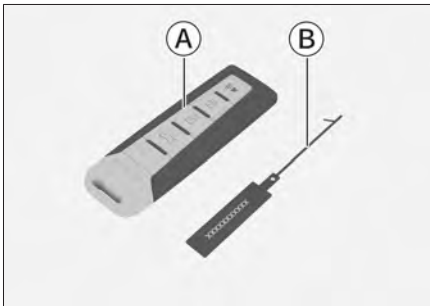
Keys	16
Door locks.....	20
Windows	31
Sunroof	35
Bonnet.....	40
Refuelling	42
Vehicle charging.....	45
Seats	52
Rearview mirrors	61
Steering wheel	64
Roof rack.....	66
Light control	68
Wiper control	75
A/C system.....	79
Mobile phone wireless charging	85
Interior equipment.....	87

Keys

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Key information



E40CC527E25A

- Ⓐ Smart key
- Ⓑ Key number tag

i NOTICE

- › Please store the key number tag in a safe place. Because the key number tag has a mechanical key code applicable to this vehicle. You may only request a new mechanical key from the authorised service centre by using this code.

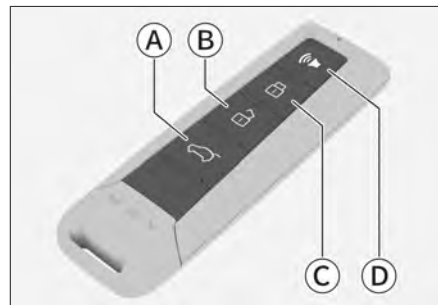
- › When purchasing or transferring the vehicle, hand over the key number tag to the purchaser.

⚠ CAUTION

The smart key contains electronic components and you should follow the following instructions to prevent damage to the smart key:

- › Please do not place the key in a hot place, such as on the instrument panel.
- › Please do not disassemble it randomly.
- › Please do not use the key to strike other objects or drop it on the ground.
- › Please do not immerse the key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- › Please do not place the key with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobiles.

Button introduction



4F744998A12D

- Ⓐ Tailgate control button

- Ⓑ Unlock button
- Ⓒ Lock button
- Ⓓ Vehicle locating button

Vehicle locating button

When all the doors and the tailgate are locked, press the vehicle locating button to turn on the vehicle locating function so that you can find the vehicle quickly in the parking lot and other places.

Press it again during the vehicle locating warning to cancel the vehicle locating function.

Unlock button

To unlock all the doors and the tailgate, press the unlock button, and the hazard warning lights flash twice.

Lock button

To lock all the doors and the tailgate, press the lock button, and the hazard warning lights flash once.

CAUTION

When locking the door, check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are completely closed if the hazard warning lights do not flash.

Tailgate control button

Press and hold the tailgate control button to automatically open or close the tailgate.

CAUTION

- › Do not modify the transmission frequency, enlarge transmission power (including additionally installing a radio frequency power amplifier), connect an external antenna, or use other transmitting antennas without permission.
- › When using the function, do not cause harmful interference to all kinds of legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is detected, stop using the function and take measures to eliminate the interference before further use.
- › Using the function may be subject to interference from various radio devices, resulting in a brief failure of function.

Battery replacement

WARNING

The vehicle key contains a button battery.

- › The button battery in the vehicle key is dangerous. Regardless it is a new battery or an old one, always keep it away from children.
- › If the button battery is swallowed or put into any part of the body, it may cause severe or fatal injury in 2 hours or less.

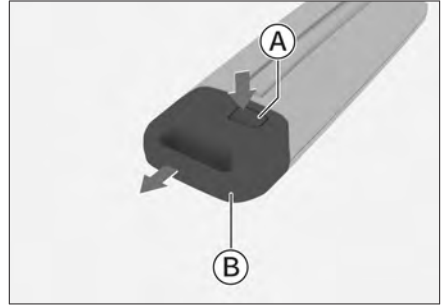
Keys

- › Seek medical attention in time if you suspect the battery has been swallowed or placed in any part of the body.
- › Please dispose of used batteries in accordance with local laws and regulations. Improper disposal of used batteries can pose a risk to the environment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › During operation, be sure to dry your hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- › The smart key contains electronic components, which must be protected from damage to the smart key due to impact, high temperature, exposure to the sun, liquid, moisture, corrosion, etc.
- › Do not touch or move any other parts.
- › The positive and negative terminals of the battery must be installed correctly.
- › Be careful not to lose parts when replacing the battery.

1. Press the release button of the mechanical key to take out the mechanical key.

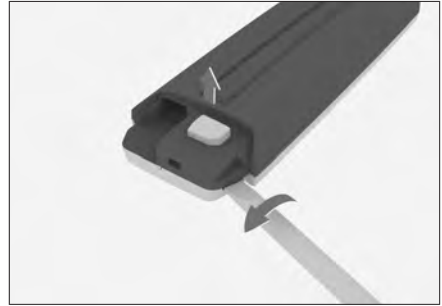


2A0F3C83A370

Ⓐ Release button

Ⓑ Mechanical key

2. Slightly pry open the key using a flat-head screwdriver.



4D4EA15B12AA

3. Take out the battery and insert a new battery in its place.



AA1388417180

When installing the battery, make sure that the positive terminal of the battery is facing down.

Battery model: CR2032

4. Install the rear cover of the key.

After installation, confirm that all the key buttons are working properly.

Door locks

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Door lock settings

You can set the relevant functions of the door locks through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Body】** → **【Door lock】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

› **【Auto lock】** : you can turn off the driving lock function or set the speed to trigger the driving lock function.

When the function is activated, all the doors and the tailgate will automatically lock when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

› **【Tailgate foot activation】** : you can turn on or off the tailgate foot activation function.

› **【Auto unlocking】** : you can turn on or off the auto unlocking function.

With the function turned on, carry the smart key and approach the vehicle. When you are approximately 1.5 metres from the front door handle, the turn signal lights flash twice and all doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.

i NOTICE

› If you do not intend to unlock the doors but you need to pass near the vehicle, the doors may automatically unlock after you pass. Then, make sure the doors are locked before leaving.

› The auto unlocking function will fail after all doors and the tailgate are locked for 48 hours. In this case, use other means to unlock the doors.

› **【Auto lock when leaving the car】** : you can turn on or off the function of the auto lock when leaving the car.

With the function turned on, all doors and the tailgate are completely closed and you carry the smart key and leave the vehicle. When you are approximately 2.5 metres from the front door handle, the turn signal lights flash once and all doors and the tailgate automatically lock.

i NOTICE

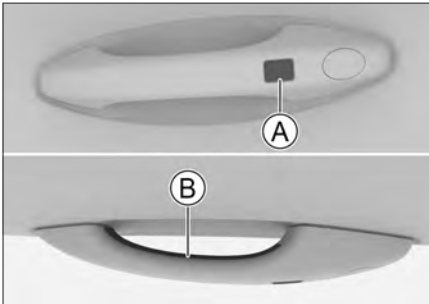
Always make sure that all doors and the tailgate are fully closed before leaving the vehicle; otherwise, the doors cannot be actively locked.

- › **【Unlock when the vehicle is off】** : you can turn on or off the function of the unlock when the vehicle is off.

With the function turned on, all doors and the tailgate automatically unlock when the vehicle exits the READY mode.

Keyless lock and unlock

When carrying the smart key with you, touch the front door handle sensor to lock or unlock the door.



4CD6233B00A5

- Ⓐ Lock sensor
- Ⓑ Unlock sensor

- › Touch the lock sensor to lock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, turn signal lights will flash once.
- › Touch the unlock sensor to unlock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, the turn signal lights will flash twice.

i NOTICE

- › When locking the door, check whether all the doors, the tailgate, and the bonnet are fully closed if the turn signal lights do not flash.
- › Operate only the doors where the smart key is detected.
- › Do not lock and unlock the doors at the same time.
- › If you wear gloves to operate the door handle, you may not be able to unlock or lock the doors.
- › The radio waves of the system are a little weak. When they are surrounded by other radio equipment or blocked by other barriers, the communication between the intelligent key and the vehicle may be affected and the system will not work normally.
- › Every time the door is successfully locked or unlocked, the system will stop working for 3 s.

Door locks

1

Operation

› After washing the vehicle in the cold season, please promptly wipe off any water stains on the gaps of the outer door handles. The accumulated water stains may freeze on the handle movement mechanism, causing the door handle to jam. For example, after the door handle is pulled up, it may not be able to return to its original position, resulting in the door not being able to close properly. In this case, you can repeatedly pull the door handle several times to remove ice buildup.

Locking and unlocking with key buttons

See the key button introduction.

(▷ Page 16)

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons



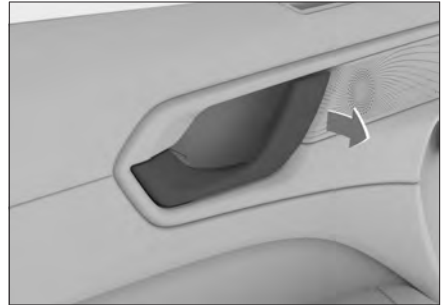
10B1EC8E3E02

The central control buttons are located on the driver side door. Press the central control buttons to lock or unlock all doors.

If the button indicator light goes on, the door is locked.

If the button indicator light goes out, the door is unlocked.

Unlocking with the interior handle



440441EB0BE0

When a vehicle door is locked, pulling the interior handle will unlock it. Pull the handle again to open the door.

i NOTICE

If the child lock is activated when opening the rear doors with the inner handle, the rear doors cannot be opened.

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key

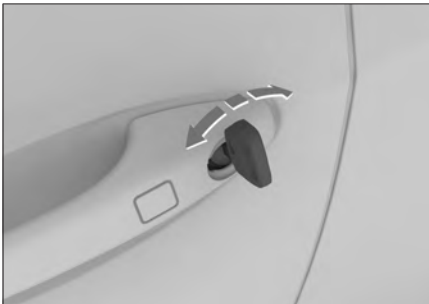
1. Pull up the door handle and push the cover from the inside to remove it.



BD744A32F8E5

2. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, turn the key to lock or unlock the door.

For how to get the mechanical key, refer to Replacing the Battery for Key. (▷ Page 17)



AC21741DEBB4

⚠ CAUTION

After the door is unlocked, the mechanical key must be pulled out before opening the driver side door.

i NOTICE

- ▷ When the mechanical key is used to unlock the door, the vehicle anti-theft alarm may be triggered.
- ▷ Insert the mechanical key according to the direction in the illustration. otherwise the key will not be fully inserted.

Locking during emergencies



9B17F182FE18

The front passenger side door and the rear doors are equipped with the door emergency locking device.

Insert the mechanical key into the emergency lock hole and turn it in the direction of the closing door and then close the doors to lock the doors.

For how to get the mechanical key, refer to Replacing the Battery for Key.

(▷ Page 17)

Door locks


i NOTICE

If you need to use this method to lock the door, it means that the electric door lock system has malfunctioned. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Tailgate Electric tailgate


Opening

For safety, please open the tailgate using the following methods with the vehicle stationary:


- › With the driver's door unlocked, press the tailgate control button  located near the steering wheel.



3561B83D5955



- › When the driver's door is unlocked, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.
- › When you carry the smart key with you, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press and hold the tailgate control button  on the key.

Closing


- › Press the tailgate control button  on the tailgate.



80B6461B7B0C

- › Press the tailgate control button  located near the steering wheel.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press and hold the tailgate control button  on the key.

⚠ WARNING

- › While the tailgate is opening or closing, press the tailgate control button , and the tailgate will stop at the current position. Please ensure that the tailgate is completely closed before driving.
- › In some cases, if it is necessary to close the tailgate manually, be sure to press on the tailgate outside the vehicle to close it completely. If the tailgate is closed directly with the auxiliary handle, it is easy to pinch the hand and cause serious personal injury.
- › It's forbidden to drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.

- › It's forbidden to ride in the luggage area.
- › When opening or closing the tailgate with other persons standing in the vicinity of the tailgate, make sure that no injuries are caused to them.
- › When closing the tailgate, please be careful not to pinch any object, such as a bag or necktie.
- › Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Otherwise, an accidental injury may be caused.

CAUTION

- › In certain situations, if you need to manually open or close the tailgate, please move it slowly and smoothly. It's forbidden to exert sudden force to compel the tailgate to open or close more quickly.
- › Always be careful when opening the tailgate in strong wind. The strong wind can cause the tailgate to open too far and deform.
- › If the tailgate is frozen or covered in snow and ice, do not force it open. First use the heating function to warm the interior of the vehicle, and then open the tailgate. If you must open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.
- › Do not install or paste any ornaments onto the tailgate strut.

- › Do not pull sideways the tailgate. Otherwise, the strut may be bent and deformed.
- › While the tailgate is opening or closing, it's forbidden to force it in the opposite direction. Otherwise, it may cause personal injury and damage the tailgate.

NOTICE

- › When the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C, the tailgate strut may not be able to automatically push the tailgate up. In this case, you can manually lift the tailgate to open it.
- › Do not install heavy accessories on the tailgate. Otherwise, it may prevent the strut from smoothly pushing the tailgate up.

Anti-pinch function

If the tailgate hits an obstacle while automatically opening and closing, it will automatically reverses at an angle and then stop when the pressure reaches a certain value.

WARNING

- › It's forbidden to test the anti-pinch function of the tailgate with any part of your body.
- › At the moment when the tailgate is completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.

Door locks

Setting the opening angle


If you need to set the opening angle of the tailgate, please use the following steps:

1. Open the tailgate, adjust it to the height that you want and hold it there.
2. Press and hold the close button on the tailgate until the vehicle gives a light signal. Then the opening angle of the tailgate is set successfully.

Electric hands-free tailgate


Opening

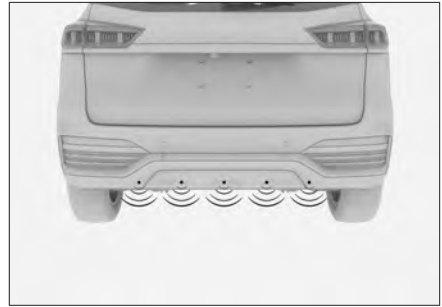
For safety, please open the tailgate using the following methods with the vehicle stationary:

- › With the driver's door unlocked, press the tailgate control button  located near the steering wheel.




- › When the driver's door is unlocked, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.
- › When you carry the smart key with you, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.



- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press and hold the tailgate control button  on the key.
- › If you carry the smart key with you, make a kicking motion towards the detection zone under the rear bumper.



Closing

- › Press the tailgate control button  on the tailgate.



- › Press the tailgate control button  located near the steering wheel.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press and hold the tailgate control button  on the key.
- › Make a kicking motion in the detection zone under the rear bumper.

i NOTICE

You can turn on or off the tailgate foot activation function through the 【Vehicle settings】 → 【Body】 → 【Door lock】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

- › When making the kicking motion, your foot should be close to the rear bumper and your toes should be at least 10 cm under the bumper but not touching the bumper. Then quickly pull your foot back. Otherwise, you may not be able to open or close the tailgate.
- › If you keep your foot in the kicked-out position under the bumper for too long, or if you kick too slowly, the tailgate will not open or close. When this happens, please repeat the kicking motion at a faster speed.
- › If you have kicked several times and the tailgate still has not opened, please wait a moment, then try again.
- › You can also close the tailgate when you do not have the smart key with you by making a similar kicking motion in the detection zone under the rear bumper.

⚠ CAUTION


To prevent the tailgate from accidentally opening, please be sure the smart key is not in the detection zone of the tailgate when washing the vehicle or using a high pressure washer.

⚠ WARNING

- › Please be sure to kick only within the detection range of the sensor. Otherwise, you may get burnt by touching the exhaust system.
- › Be sure you are standing firmly on the ground when making the kicking motion, and maintain enough space between yourself and the back of the vehicle. Otherwise, you may lose your balance (for example, on an icy surface).
- › To prevent the tailgate from accidentally opening or closing, do not carry the smart key with you in the following situations.
 - When putting something down or picking up something up behind the vehicle.
 - When polishing or doing other maintenance on the back of the vehicle.

Door locks

⚠ WARNING

› While the tailgate is opening or closing, press the tailgate control button , and the tailgate will stop at the current position. Please ensure that the tailgate is completely closed before driving.

› In some cases, if it is necessary to close the tailgate manually, be sure to press on the tailgate outside the vehicle to close it completely.

If the tailgate is closed directly with the auxiliary handle, it is easy to pinch the hand and cause serious personal injury.

› It's forbidden to drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.

› It's forbidden to ride in the luggage area.

› When opening or closing the tailgate with other persons standing in the vicinity of the tailgate, make sure that no injuries are caused to them.

› When closing the tailgate, please be careful not to pinch any object, such as a bag or necktie.

› Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Otherwise, an accidental injury may be caused.

⚠ CAUTION

› In certain situations, if you need to manually open or close the tailgate, please move it slowly and smoothly. It's forbidden to exert sudden force to compel the tailgate to open or close more quickly.

› Always be careful when opening the tailgate in strong wind. The strong wind can cause the tailgate to open too far and deform.

› If the tailgate is frozen or covered in snow and ice, do not force it open. First use the heating function to warm the interior of the vehicle, and then open the tailgate.

If you must open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.

› Do not install or paste any ornaments onto the tailgate strut.

› Do not pull sideways the tailgate. Otherwise, the strut may be bent and deformed.

› While the tailgate is opening or closing, it's forbidden to force it in the opposite direction. Otherwise, it may cause personal injury and damage the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C, the tailgate strut may not be able to automatically push the tailgate up. In this case, you can manually lift the tailgate to open it.
- Do not install heavy accessories on the tailgate. Otherwise, it may prevent the strut from smoothly pushing the tailgate up.

Anti-pinch function

If the tailgate hits an obstacle while automatically opening and closing, it will automatically reverse at an angle and then stop when the pressure reaches a certain value.

⚠ WARNING

- It's forbidden to test the anti-pinch function of the tailgate with any part of your body.
- At the moment when the tailgate is completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.

Setting the opening angle

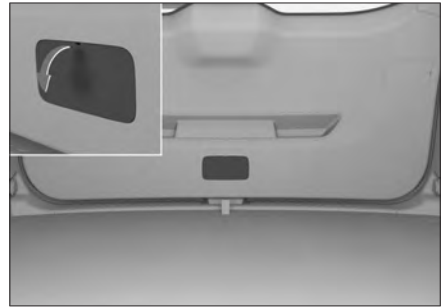
If you need to set the opening angle of the tailgate, please use the following steps:

1. Open the tailgate, adjust it to the height that you want and hold it there.

2. Press and hold the close button on the tailgate until the vehicle gives a light signal. Then the opening angle of the tailgate is set successfully.

Emergency unlock

1. Pry down the emergency cover plate at the bottom of inner side of the tailgate using a flathead screwdriver.



99E32A497C2B

i NOTICE

Wrap the head of the screwdriver with a cloth before removal.

2. Move the emergency opening device counter-clockwise in the direction shown in the figure to open the tailgate.



059CCB885397

Door locks

i NOTICE

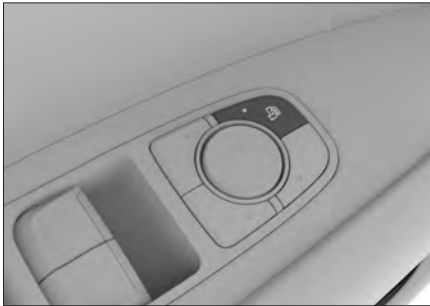
In some cases, if you need to directly move the emergency opening device with your hands, try not to touch the sheet metal parts to avoid cutting your hands.

i NOTICE

Do not operate the child safety lock switch and the rear door interior handle at the same time. Before operating the child safety lock switch, make sure that no occupant pulls the rear door interior handle. Otherwise, problems such as failure to unlock the child safety lock may occur.

Child safety lock

The rear doors are fitted with child safety locks. When they are activated, they can prevent children from accidentally opening the doors.



17C57C410255

The rear door child safety lock can be turned on or off by pressing the button. When the indicator light on the button goes on, the child safety lock is enabled. When the indicator light on the button goes off, the child safety lock is disabled.

i NOTICE

After the child lock is activated, the door can only be opened by pulling the door handle from outside the car.

Automatic resetting

When the bonnet is closed and all the doors and the tailgate are locked, if the power supply mode and the states of all the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet do not change within 30 seconds after the vehicle are unlocked (except the mechanical key), all the doors and the tailgate will automatically lock.

Automatic unlock upon collision

With the power in ON mode, when the system detects a collision, all doors will be unlocked automatically.

Anti-misoperation lock

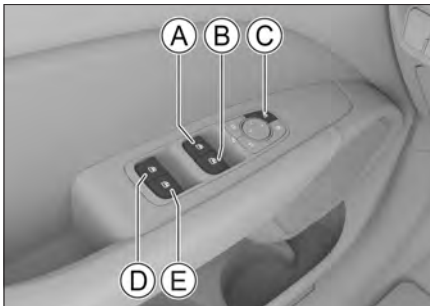
When the last door is closed with the driver's door locked, all locked doors will be unlocked automatically.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Opening and closing vehicle windows

Driver's window switch



CD20347F731D

- Ⓐ Driver's window switch
- Ⓑ Front passenger's window switch
- Ⓒ Window lock switch
- Ⓓ Rear left window switch
- Ⓔ Rear right window switch

Manual operation

To lower or raise the window, gently press or pull up and hold the corresponding switch until the window reaches the proper position.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the heads and hands of all passengers are away from the window before raising the window. Otherwise, an extremely serious injury will be caused.

⚠ CAUTION

In low-temperature environment, freezing may occur between the window glass and the window frame, resulting in the failure of the glass to move normally. In this case, please do not force to operate it to avoid damage to the lift mechanism. After the interior temperature rises and the ice on the glass thaws, the glass can be raised and lowered normally.

One-push raising or lowering

Press the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically lower completely. To stop it halfway, just pull up the switch.

Pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically raise completely. To stop it halfway, just press the switch.

Windows

Emergency raising

In case of emergency, pull up the window switch to exceed the pressure point and hold it, the window will trigger the emergency raising function, and the window anti-pinch function will not work at this time.

Locking windows

When the window lock switch is pressed, the window switches on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding windows.

Pressing the window lock switch again will recover the function of the rear window switches.

i NOTICE

When the window lock function is turned on, the window lock switch indicator light goes on.

When the window lock function is turned off, the window lock switch indicator light goes off.

i NOTICE

For vehicles equipped with an electric child lock, the electric child lock function is turned on or off along with the window lock function.

! WARNING

When children are present in the vehicle, it is advisable for them to be seated in the relatively safe rear seats and for the window lock function to be activated.

Passenger side window switches

On the handrail of the passenger side door, there is a window switch which can be used to open or close the corresponding window.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection may be triggered to protect the glass lifter motor after repeated operation of the window switch. At this time, the window switch will temporarily fail. The window switch automatically returns to normal after the lifter motor cools down.

Anti-pinch function

During the process of raising the window, if there is an obstacle between the window frame and the window, when the pressure reaches a certain value, the window will stop raising and automatically descend a certain distance.

! WARNING

› Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.

- › At the moment when the window is completely raised, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.
- › When the window triggers the emergency raising function, the window anti-pinch function will not work.

i NOTICE

- › Under severe conditions, such as low temperature and severe bumping, the anti-pinch function may be triggered in the process of window glass raising, and the window cannot be raised smoothly. At this time, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point to close the window.
- › When the one-push raising or lowering function is abnormal, the anti-pinch function will be disabled at the same time, and initialization can be performed to restore it to normal.

Delay function

The vehicle windows can still be operated within a few seconds after switching the power supply to OFF.

One-push raising function

With the power supply in OFF mode and all the doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle and all the windows will be automatically closed.

Press the key unlock or lock button to make a pause in the lift during automatic window raise.

i NOTICE

- › If the window function is disordered due to battery failure or other reasons, the one-push raising function cannot automatically raise the window. At this time, the window needs to be initialized.
- › If an obstacle in the window is found during the automatic raising, the anti-pinch function may be triggered, causing the window to fail to raise.
- › You must confirm that the windows are completely closed before leaving.

Window initialization

When the window-related function is abnormal, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Set the power supply to the ON mode.
2. Pull up the window switch equipped with one-push raising or lowering function beyond the pressure point until the window is completely closed and then hold for about 3 seconds.
3. Operate the window switch again so that the window goes through the one-push raising and one-push lowering.

Windows

i NOTICE

When the one-push raising or lowering function is disordered or every time the battery is disconnected and re-energized, windows with one-push function need to be initialized.

1

Operation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Opening and closing the sunroof



3E2A702771F

Manual operation

- › Pull backward sunroof switch continuously to tilt the sunroof to the maximum angle and stop; pull backward the switch again to gradually open the sunroof.
- › Pull forward sunroof switch continuously to gradually close the sunroof.
- › To make the sunroof stop in the midway, release the switch.

Automatic operation

- › Pull backward and release the sunroof switch to tilt the sunroof automatically to the maximum angle and stop; pull backward and release the switch again to automatically open the sunroof to the proper position; pull backward and release the switch again to automatically and completely open the sunroof.
- › Push forward and release the sunroof switch to automatically close the sunroof.
- › To stop the sunroof halfway, push or pull the switch again.

! WARNING

- › Do not extend your hands or head outside through the sunroof when the vehicle is on the move. If the objects outside of the vehicle are scraped or in case of an emergency brake, it is risk to causing serious personal injury or even death.
- › When closing the sunroof, be careful not to clip other people's hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injury.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

Sunroof

Opening and closing the sunshade



B77FE30593E6

Manual operation

- › Pull backward the sunshade switch continuously to gradually open the sunshade.
- › Push forward the sunshade switch continuously to gradually close the sunshade.
- › To make the sunshade stop in the mid-way, release the switch.

Automatic operation

- › Pull the sunshade switch backward and then release it, and the sunshade will open automatically.
- › Push the sunshade switch forward and then release it, and the sunshade will close automatically.
- › To make the sunshade stop in the mid-way, push or pull the switch again.

Linkage function

In the process of opening the sunroof, the system will automatically adjust the opening degree of the sunshade according to the opening of the sunroof.

⚠ WARNING

- › When closing the sunshade, be careful not to clip other people's hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injury.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunshade.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not squeeze the sunroof sunshade with force, so as to prevent the sunshade from falling off or being damaged.
- › When parking a vehicle for a long time, it is suggested to close the sunroof sunshade to prevent the interior trim from being damaged due to the inside high temperature if it is exposed to the sun for a long time.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection function may be triggered to protect the sunroof motor after repeated operation of the sunroof switch. At this time, the sun roof function will be temporarily disabled, and the sunroof will fail to be operated. The sunroof switch will automatically return to normal after the motor cools down.

Anti-pinch function

If the sunroof or sunshade encounters an obstruction during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and return a certain distance.

WARNING

- › Despite the anti-pinch function, there is still a risk of pinching.
In special cases (e.g. if the obstruction is thin), the closing process cannot be interrupted. Therefore, despite the anti-pinch function, it is important to ensure that the closing area of the sunroof and sunshade remains unobstructed.
- › Do not attempt to use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- › At the moment when the sunroof and sunshade are completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if any object is stuck.

- › When closing the sunroof and sunshade manually, the anti-pinch function will not work. Be careful not to pinch fingers or other body parts.

Delay function

Within a few seconds after switching the power to OFF mode, the sunroof and sunshade still can be operated.

Easy closing

With the power supply in OFF mode and all the doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle to automatically close the sunroof.

WARNING

Make sure that heads, hands, necks and other parts of all occupants are away from the sunroof before using the easy closing function to close the sunroof. Otherwise serious injuries may occur.

NOTICE

If an obstacle between the window glass and the window frame is found during the automatic raising of the window glass, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that the windows are completely raised before leaving.

Sunroof

Automatic sunroof closing

- › When the power supply is in OFF mode, if the rainfall and light sensor senses rain or snow, etc., the sunroof will be automatically closed.

i NOTICE

In case of the little rain, the sunroof may not be closed automatically. It must be confirmed that the sunroof is completely closed before leaving.

- › The sunroof closes automatically when the speed exceeds 120 km/h for more than 3 s during driving.

i NOTICE

- › If the vehicle speed drops below 120 km/h within 3 s, the sunroof will not be closed automatically.
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h during sunroof operation, the sunroof will remain in its original state of operation and will not trigger the automatic sunroof closing function.
- › If the sunroof switch is operated during automatic sunroof closing, the automatic sunroof closing function will be interrupted.

- › If the automatic sunroof closing function has been triggered or interrupted while driving, the vehicle must accelerate again from a standstill to over 120 km/h for more than 3 s before the automatic sunroof closing function can be triggered again.

Sunroof initialisation

If the system is in disorder, it can be recovered through the following operations:

1. Close the sunroof and sunshade completely, press and hold the sunroof closing button until the sunroof and the sunshade jitter, and then release the button.
2. Press and hold the sunroof close button again within 5 seconds until the sunroof and sunshade complete the movement from being open to fully closed, then release the button, and the initialisation is completed.

i NOTICE

- › To avoid the sunroof initialisation failure due to an undervoltage battery, it is recommended to start the vehicle before performing the sunroof initialisation operation.

- › The initialization may not be completed if the ambient temperature is below 3°C. Please wait until the ambient temperature is greater than or equal to 3°C before carrying out the initialisation.

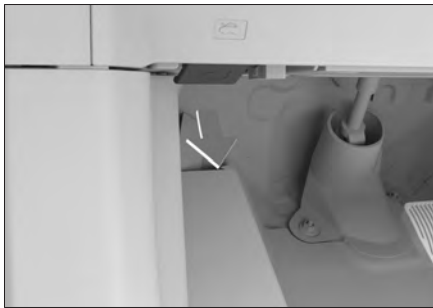
Bonnet

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

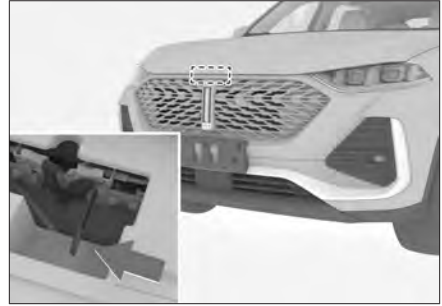
Opening

1. By pulling the handle located under the driver's side instrument panel, the hood will pop out a gap.



316DF4089F54

2. With your hand in the gap, push the handle in the direction of the arrow and lift the hood to a certain angle. Then, the hood will automatically rise to open.



7F0C3B51C9DF

i NOTICE

- › When the drive system of the vehicle is ready (when the READY indicator light on the combination instrument is on), open the hood, and the vehicle will automatically start the engine and shutdown will be forbidden.
- › In the low temperature environment, the hood strut may not be able to support the hood automatically. When such a situation occurs, you may lift the hood manually to open it.

Closing the bonnet

Pull the bonnet downwards and close it by pressing it downwards with the appropriate force at a height of 20 to 30 cm from the lock.

WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is fully closed and secured prior to driving. Otherwise it may open unexpectedly during the vehicle running, leading to an accident.

CAUTION

- › Before closing the bonnet, make sure that there is no debris left inside the engine compartment.
- › Do not use excessive force when closing the bonnet. Failure to do so may deform the bonnet.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Refuelling method

1. When the vehicle is completely stopped, switch the power mode to OFF.
2. Press the fuel tank door unlock button.

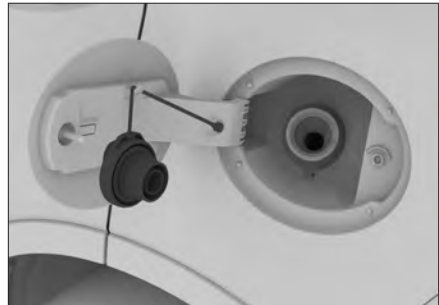


6D86984F46B5

i NOTICE

Refuelling should be completed within 18 minutes after the fuel tank door is opened. Otherwise, the isolation valve on the fuel tank will automatically close, resulting in unsmooth refuelling or fuel backwash. Therefore, when the refuelling is not completed within 18 minutes, please press the unlock button on the fuel tank door again.

3. When the driver's door is unlocked, press the end of the fuel door near the rear end of the vehicle, and the fuel door will pop open gently.
4. Turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to open it, and fix the fuel tank cap cable to the fuel tank door so as to avoid soiling the vehicle body.



ADC6FF27542E

⚠ WARNING

- › When loosening the fuel tank cap, please do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound has stopped, you can open it slowly.

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may be sprayed from the fuel tank filler due to large internal pressure, resulting in a personal injury.

- › Take care of such matters during re-fuelling:

The engine must be shut down.

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

It's forbidden to answer or make calls.


Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

i NOTICE

- › Do not add too much fuel; just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.
- › Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling. Otherwise, the painted surfaces may be corroded.
- › Add only the designated fuel.

5. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a "click" sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap has been installed in place.

i NOTICE

The fuel tank cap should be installed in place. Otherwise, the engine malfunction warning light  may go on.

6. Close the fuel tank door.

! CAUTION

- › It's forbidden to operate the fuel tank door violently, so as to prevent the locking mechanism from deformation and break which may result in the failure to open or close the fuel tank door.
- › Please close the fuel tank door promptly when the fuel has been added. If the fuel tank door is not closed for a long time, dust, silt and other foreign matters may accumulate, causing the fuel tank door not to be closed, or not to be opened again after being closed. Clean the pushrod of the fuel tank door, the pushrod locking hole and its surrounding area.

Fuel information

Only unleaded gasoline can be used in this vehicle.

Choose an unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher for optimum engine performance.

It is possible to add fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, e.g. E5 or E10.

Fuel tank capacity (reference value):
55±1.65 litres.

Refuelling

CAUTION

- › Do not use unsuitable fuel. Otherwise, the engine will be damaged.
- › Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline will not only cause the three-way catalytic converter to fail, but will also cause the emission control system to malfunction.
- › Do not use gasoline containing methanol, e.g. M15, M85, M100.
The use of gasoline containing methanol may damage the engine or cause engine failure.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Charging management

⚠ CAUTION

- › When using the vehicle for the first time or after it has been parked for a long time, there may be a deviation between the actual battery level and the instrument display, so it is recommended to fully charge the vehicle before using it.
- › Regularly fully charging the vehicle can keep the traction battery in the best working condition. Please perform a full charge (SOC 100%) every week to ensure the accuracy of battery power estimation; perform a full charge at a low battery (power \leq 20%) every 2 to 3 months.

i NOTICE

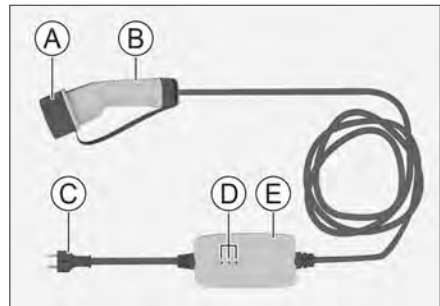
- › When the traction battery is charged to a high level, it will enter the trickle charging state, and the charging time at the end will be longer, so the estimated remaining charging time may be different from the actual time.
- › When the traction battery is low, the power performance of the vehicle will be weakened, so please charge the vehicle in time.

Set charging functions via **【Power Assistant】** → **【Charging Management】** on the multimedia display.

- › **【Charging Mode】** : you can set the immediate charging or reserved charging.
- › **【Traction Battery SOC】** : you can set the traction battery level when traction battery charging is completed.

Charging cable

The charging cable is located in the luggage area.



48898A204083

- (A) Dust cap

Vehicle charging

- Ⓑ Charging gun
- Ⓒ Connector
- Ⓓ Indicator
- Ⓔ Control box

i NOTICE

- › Due to differences in voltage and target market, the plug of the charging cable may be different, and the illustration is for reference only.
- › The charging cable supplied with the vehicle is only suitable for ordinary charging.
- › For easy viewing at any time, the statement of indicator state and its precautions are marked at the back of control box of the charging cable.

A CAUTION

- › Before charging, make sure that the plug of the charging cable is properly inserted into the socket. Otherwise, there is a risk of electric shock or ablation of the charging cable.
- › Charging is prohibited when the charging cable is damaged.
- › It is recommended to use the original charging cable. If other charging cables are used, it may cause the power battery to fail to charge normally and malfunctions.

› It is forbidden to disassemble, repair, or modify charging equipment (charging cable, charging port, etc.), otherwise it may cause charging faults and fire.

› Before starting the vehicle, you must confirm that the charging gun has been completely pulled out; otherwise it may cause damage to the charging device and the vehicle.

› In order to prevent damage to the charging cable, please pay attention to the following points:

It is forbidden to forcibly stretch, twist, bend, or step on the cable components.

The charging cable must not be placed near objects with high temperature such as heaters.

It is forbidden to store or use the charging cable in a place with a temperature higher than 55°C.

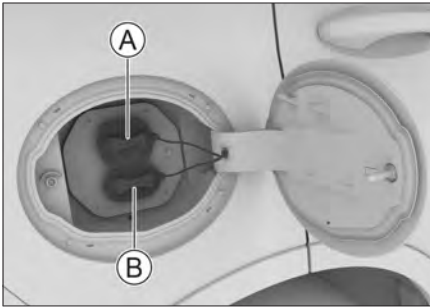
Avoid direct sunlight or use in humid places.

Charging port

The charging port is located on the rear right fender of the vehicle.



When the driver side door is unlocked, press one end of the charging port cover near the rear of the vehicle to open the charging port cover.



- › (A): Common charging port (AC charging)
- › (A+B): Fast charging port (DC charging)

i NOTICE

The charging time may vary depending on the power battery SOC, the service time and the ambient temperature.

! CAUTION

Do not violently operate the charging port cover. Otherwise, the locking mechanism may deform and break, resulting in failure to open or close the charging port cover.

Regular charging (AC charging)

Charging method

1. After the vehicle is stopped, shift to P gear.
2. Set charging mode and traction battery SOC by going to **【Power Assistant】** → **【Charging Management】** on the multimedia display.

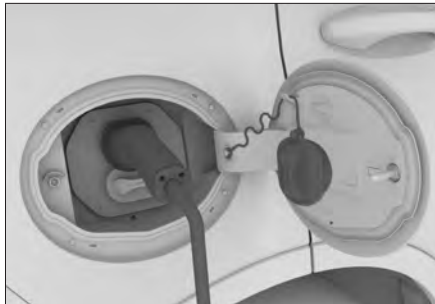
i NOTICE

Only when the traction battery SOC setting is higher than the current remaining power of the vehicle, can it be charged normally. Therefore, before connecting the charging gun, you need to confirm that the traction battery SOC setting is higher than the current remaining power of the vehicle.

3. When the driver door is unlocked, press the charging port cover at the end nearer to the vehicle's rear to pop it open.

Vehicle charging

4. Remove the dust plugs from the regular charging port and charging gun, and insert the charging gun into the regular charging port.



DB8A385608B5

⚠ CAUTION

Do not forcibly connect the charging gun and charging port if one or both have a foreign object inside. Contact an authorised service centre as soon as possible. Forced connection will damage the charger and vehicle.

Use a blow dryer to defrost a frozen charging port. Forcibly connecting the charging gun when the port is frozen will cause a failure.

5. Plug the charging cable into the socket.

⚠ WARNING

- › A circuit breaker must be installed on the power supply side, and you must use a socket that matches the charging cable supplied with the vehicle.

- › Avoid too many cable connections and adaptors on the charging circuit, and avoid using a long cable. This helps to prevent abnormal heating and current leakage, which may cause a fire or electric shock.

6. When finished charging, unlock the doors and release the charging gun.

i NOTICE

When you cannot pull out the charging gun smoothly, please do not operate it violently. You can try to lock the door first, then unlock the door, and then pull out the charging gun.

7. Then pull the plug out of the power supply.
8. Put the dust plugs back in place on the regular charging port and charging gun and close the charging port cover.

⚠ WARNING

- › If you have a medical implant in your body, such as a cardiac defibrillator, confirm with its manufacturer whether charging equipment will interfere with it before charging the vehicle.
- › We recommend that no one stays in the vehicle while it is charging. Anyone who has a medical implant, such as a cardiac defibrillator that may be affected by the charging equipment may not enter the vehicle or remove anything from the luggage space.

- › Before charging, make sure that there is no water or foreign objects in the charging terminals of the vehicle, socket, power supply equipment or charging cable, and check whether the metal terminals are rusty or corroded. Otherwise, charging is prohibited. An abnormal terminal connection may cause a short circuit or electric shock that is potentially fatal.
- › Charging equipment should be kept out of the reach of children. Do not allow children or other vulnerable people to charge the vehicle.
- › Do not charge the vehicle in an exposed environment in case of bad weather such as heavy rain or snow. When charging has finished and to avoid electric shock, ensure that your hands and the charging port do not have any water on them before disconnecting the charging equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not forcibly remove the charging gun while charging. Otherwise, damage or danger may easily occur.
- › If you smell anything strange or notice smoke while charging, stop charging immediately and evacuate all people from the electric vehicle. Contact an authorised service centre for service.

- › When charging, disconnect other high-power electronic equipment to keep your charging process efficient.
- › Do not use charging equipment with unstable voltage because this will cause a vehicle accident.
- › The ambient temperature affects the charging time. Both high and low temperatures will extend the charging time. The traction battery cannot be charged externally if the battery cell temperature is lower than -30°C .
- › Both the low-voltage and high-voltage power of the vehicle are provided by the charging system while the vehicle is charging. A power consumption function will extend the charging time.

Emergency unlock

In normal conditions, try the following if you cannot remove the charging gun:

Pull the unlock cable located near the right rear damper and then pull out the charging gun.



4397D9DE456B

Vehicle charging

i NOTICE

- › The emergency unlock cable is only for emergency use when the charging gun locking device has a fault. Frequent use will damage the emergency unlocking device.
- › If the charging gun can only be pulled out with the emergency unlock cable, the charging gun locking device may be faulty. Please go to an authorised service centre as soon as possible for repair.
- › If the charging gun cannot be unplugged by using the emergency unlock cable, the charging device may be faulty. Please do not operate the emergency unlock cable frequently. Contact the charging device operator for assistance.

Fast charging (DC charging)

Before charging, read the relevant operating instructions on the charging device carefully, and strictly comply with the relevant regulations of the charging station.

1. Stop the vehicle completely and shift to the P gear position.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to set the power supply mode to OFF for charging.

During charging, both low and high voltage power for the vehicle is supplied by the charging system. The use of the vehicle power consumption function (e.g. using the vehicle in ON mode) may prolong the charging time or increase the charging costs.

When charging is completed, the charging system will automatically disconnect. Then, the vehicle only has 12 V battery to provide low voltage power. If you need to use the power consumption function of the vehicle, pull out the charger and start the vehicle in order to put the vehicle in READY state. Then, the traction battery is in operation, providing high and low voltage power to the vehicle to prevent the vehicle from being inoperable due to the 12 V battery undervoltage.

2. Open the charging port cover and then remove the dust plug from the fast charging port.
3. Strictly follow the operating instructions on the charging device.

! CAUTION

- › To ensure that the battery is in top condition, you are recommended to fully charge the battery once a week in slow charging.
- › Ensure that the charging gun is properly connected. Otherwise, it may cause inability to charge or damage the charging device.

- › After charging, if you cannot pull out the charging gun, please contact the charging device operator for help.

i NOTICE

When the temperature is too low, fast charging is not applicable for the traction battery, but a slow charging is available.

Seats

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Front seats

Headrest

i NOTICE

The lowest position of the headrest is not its use position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.

! WARNING

The headrest must not be adjusted while the vehicle is being driven.

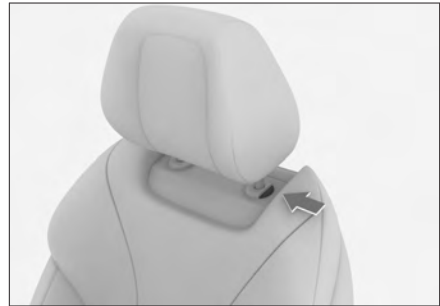
i NOTICE

After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to make sure it is locked firmly.

! WARNING

The headrest must not be removed while the vehicle is being driven. If this is done and a collision occurs, the neck of the driver or passenger neck will be subject to major strain, potentially resulting in serious injury or even death.

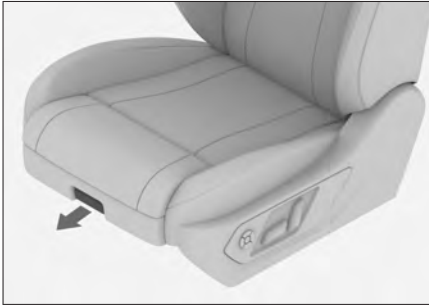
When the headrest centre height is aligned with the top of your ears, it will give full play to its protection function.



CEDB811FDEA8

- › To raise the headrest: Directly pull it upwards to the desired position.
- › To lower the headrest: Push the headrest down to the required position while pressing and holding the headrest adjustment button.
- › To remove the headrest: Remove the headrest while pressing and holding the headrest adjustment button.
If necessary, adjust the seat backrest so that the headrest can be removed.

Leg support function



A5869C9E9B96

Pull the handle at the bottom of the seat forwards and hold it there. Then pull or push the front of the seat cushion.

Pull out the front of the seat cushion to provide more support for the legs.

Front power seat adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the seat when driving.
- › Make sure the driver seat is adjusted to a correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations and may even lead to accidents, and the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices cannot be effectively used.

i NOTICE

Some features are only available for the driver seat.

Seat backrest adjustment



72F865CF9CEC

Move the top of the button forwards and backwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Do not excessively tilt the seat backrest to avoid your body slipping out of the lap belt in a collision. The seat belts can provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

Seat forward/backward adjustment



F0E4AB736363

Move the button forwards and backwards to adjust the front and rear positions of the seat.

Seats

Seat height adjustment



37398D93A086

Move the rear of the button up and down to adjust the height of the seat.

Seat cushion adjustment



30D42C9ECD51

Move the front of the button up and down to adjust the angle of the seat cushion.

Lumbar support adjustment

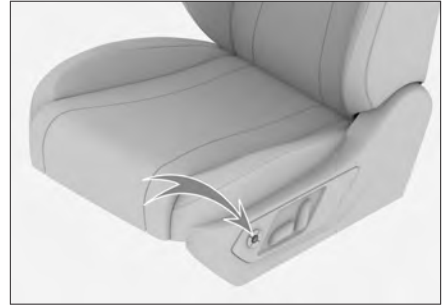


6322F745D20D

Press the button ◀ or ▶ to reinforce or weaken the lumbar support.

Press the button ▲ or ▼ button to raise or lower the lumbar support.

Seat massage function



BEF33FBA6A5B

The seat massage function has two modes, namely strong mode and weak mode. The massage function can be cycled among weak, strong and off modes by pressing the massage function button.

The massage function stops automatically after a period of operation.

The seat massage function can be switched off directly by pressing any of the lumbar support adjustment buttons.

You can enter the massage adjustment interface via the **【Seat】** button on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

Front manual seat adjustment

⚠ WARNING

> Never adjust the seat when driving.

- › Make sure the driver seat is adjusted to a correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations and may even lead to accidents, and the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices cannot be effectively used.
- › Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively to prevent the passenger from sliding out from the lap belt when a collision happens. The seat belts can provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

Seat backrest adjustment



B70BC4FD309F

Keep your body tightly against the backrest, pull up the seat backrest tilt adjustment lever, lean back to adjust the backrest to the desired tilt and then release the adjustment lever.

Seat position adjustment



F72A674EF83A

Pull up the seat position adjustment lever, slide the seat back and forth to the required position, and release the adjustment lever.

Seat heating/ventilation function

Seat heating/ventilation function can be turned on or off via the air conditioning setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

Tap the seat icon (↙ or ↘) at the bottom of the air conditioning setting interface to set the heating (or ventilation) function of the corresponding seat in the lower-level interface that pops up.

i NOTICE

The heating and ventilation functions of one seat cannot be enabled at the same time.

WARNING

When the seat heating function is used, the following occupants must take care:

- › Infants, children, the elderly, the ill or the physically disadvantaged;
- › Those with sensitive skin;
- › A person who is overworked;
- › A person who is drowsy because of drinking or taking medicine.

CAUTION

- › Do not modify the seat and its electrical system. Otherwise, the function and the service life of the seat heater will be affected.
- › To prevent seat overheating, do not place any mats, cushions or other insulating materials on the seat when the heater is in use.
- › To prevent the undervoltage battery, it is forbidden to use the seat heating function for a long time without starting the vehicle.
- › The seat heater may be damaged when the following conditions occur, and it must be checked before use:
There is a lot of water on the seat.
The seat is pierced by sharp objects (pins or knives).
The seat smells peculiar.

Driver seat setting

Go to the driver seat setting interface via the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driver Seat】** on the multimedia display screen.

Driver seat welcome

When this function is enabled, each time the power supply is switched to OFF mode, the driver seat automatically moves backwards a certain distance to allow the driver to leave the vehicle.

When the power supply is switched from OFF mode to ON mode again, the driver seat returns to the position it was in before moving backwards.

NOTICE

- › During the process of automatically moving back or returning to the original position of the driver seat, if the seat adjustment switch is operated, the seat will execute the command of the adjustment switch.
- › After the driver seat has automatically moved back a certain distance, the seat welcome function will not return to its original position if any adjustments are made to the seat.

Driver seat memory

- › Automatic memory: When this function is enabled, the position of the driver seat is automatically stored in the currently logged-in account. After logging into your account, the driver seat will automatically adjust to the last used position.
- › Manual memory: When this function is enabled, the position of the driver seat can be manually stored in the memory button.

Touch the memory button for a long time to store the current position of the driver seat, with a prompt that the seat position is saved successfully.

Touch the memory button to recall the driver seat position stored by that button.

i NOTICE

When the driver seat position is stored, the position of the side mirrors is also stored.

Driver seat adjustment

Touch the arrow buttons around the seat icon to adjust it accordingly.

Rear seats

Rear seat headrest

⚠ WARNING

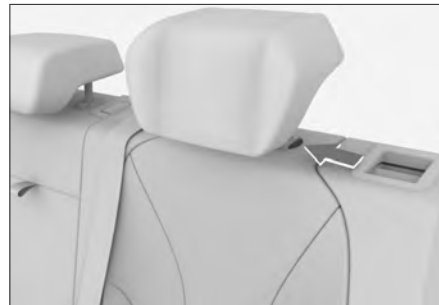
- › It is forbidden to adjust the headrest during driving.

- › It is forbidden to drive without the headrest. Otherwise, if there is a collision, your neck will be greatly impacted, resulting in serious injury and even death.

i NOTICE

- › The lowest position of the headrest is not its using position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.
- › After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to make sure it is locked firmly.

When the headrest centre height is aligned with the top of your ears, it will give full play to its protection function.

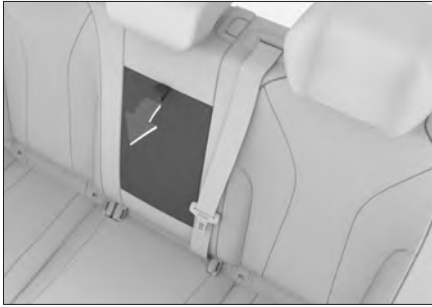


38A51DB23251

- › To raise the headrest: Directly pull it upwards to the desired position.
- › To lower the headrest: Push the headrest down to the required position while pressing and holding the headrest adjustment button.
- › To remove the headrest: Remove the headrest while pressing and holding the headrest adjustment button.

Seats

Rear seat armrest

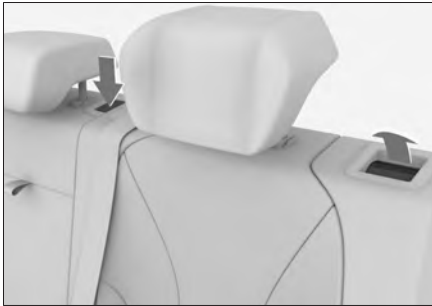


446B7D1E91ED

The rear seat armrest provides elbow support for rear occupants and make their arms feel more comfortable. It can be used by pulling the strap outwards and lowering it down.

Rear seat adjustment

Backrest unlock



E53A2A67DC38

- › Press the unlock button on the top of the middle backrest of the rear seat to unlock the middle backrest of the rear seat.
- › Pull up unlock handles on the top of the backrests on both sides to unlock the outer backrests of the rear seats.

Backrest folding

After unlocking the rear seat backrest, lowering it forwards for folding.

i NOTICE

- › Before folding, adjust the headrest to an appropriate position to avoid interference with the seat cushion or front seat.
- › Before folding, put the seat belt back in place to avoid interference when folding the backrest.
- › After folding, when adjusting the front seat, take care to avoid hitting the rear seat in the folded position.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Remove all items from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- › Do not place heavy objects on the top of the seat backrest when it is folded down.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not adjust or fold the seat backrest while the vehicle is in motion.
- › No one is allowed to sit on a folded seat backrest or in the luggage area.
- › When lowering the middle backrest of the rear seat, do not enter the luggage area from the space between the backrests on both sides of the rear seat, in order to avoid being injured by the locking lever of the middle backrest of the rear seat.

- › Children are prohibited from entering the luggage area.

Convenient rear seat lowering



03C59D374909

When the rear seat unlocking handles are fitted on both sides of the luggage area, the rear seat backrests can be unlocked by pulling the handles and then the corresponding rear seats can be lowered from the luggage area.

Backrest restoring

The rear seat backrest has 2 positions for use. When the backrest is folded, lift the backrest directly to return it to the first use position; pull the unlocking handle on the top of the backrest and continue to push the backrest back to adjust it to the second use position.

⚠ WARNING

- › Before returning the rear backrest to the use position, adjust the seat belt so that it does not get caught when the backrest is restored.

- › After returning the rear seat backrest to its use position, gently move the seat backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is locked in place.

Rear seat heating function

The rear seat heating function can be set via the air conditioning setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

Tap the **【Rear】** button on the air conditioning setting interface to enter the rear seat heating setting interface.

- › Tap the heating button **☺** or the area around the button to set the heating function of the corresponding rear seat.
- › Tap the **【Turn off all】** button to turn off the rear seat heating function.

⚠ WARNING

When the seat heating function is used, the following occupants must take care:

- › Infants, children, the elderly, the ill or the physically disadvantaged;
- › Those with sensitive skin;
- › A person who is overworked;
- › A person who is drowsy because of drinking or taking medicine.

CAUTION

- › Do not modify the seat and its electrical system. Otherwise, the function and the service life of the seat heater will be affected.
- › To prevent seat overheating, do not place any mats, cushions or other insulating materials on the seat when the heater is in use.
- › To prevent the undervoltage battery, it is forbidden to use the seat heating function for a long time without starting the vehicle.
- › The seat heater may be damaged when the following conditions occur, and it must be checked before use:
 - There is a lot of water on the seat.
 - The seat is pierced by sharp objects (pins or knives).
 - The seat smells peculiar.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Interior rearview mirror

Automatic anti-glare inside rearview mirror

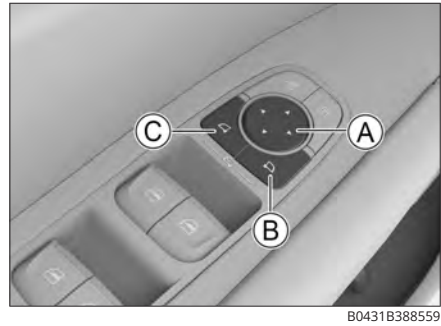
The inside rearview mirror will automatically reduce the reflection according to the light intensity of the headlamps of the vehicle behind.

i NOTICE

After the reverse gear is engaged, the inner rearview mirror remains at its highest reflectivity, making it easier to see the conditions behind the vehicle.

Side mirrors

Side mirror adjustment



- Ⓐ Mirror adjustment button
- Ⓑ Right side mirror button
- Ⓒ Left side mirror button

Mirror adjustment

1. Press the side mirror button to select the left (L) or right (R) side mirror. If the button indicator light goes on, the mirror has entered the selected state.
2. Press the front, rear, left and right positions of mirror adjustment button to adjust the angle of the left or right side mirror.
3. After the adjustment, press the side mirror button again, the button indicator light will go out and the mirror exits from the selected state.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Otherwise, errors in control can lead to accidents and serious injuries or death.

Rearview mirrors

Electric folding

Press the left and right side mirror selection buttons simultaneously and the side mirrors will automatically fold up. Press again them simultaneously and the side mirrors will automatically unfold.

Side mirrors can also be folded via the buttons on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

CAUTION

For electric folding side mirrors, do not fold them manually. Otherwise, the internal structure of the side mirrors may be damaged.

WARNING

- › Before driving, you must unfold the side mirrors and adjust them appropriately.
- › Be careful of your fingers when moving the side mirror to avoid injury or damaging the side mirror.

Side mirrors settings

You can set the functions related to the side mirrors through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Body】** → **【Side mirrors】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Fold side mirrors】** : you can set the folding mode of the side mirrors.

When the automatic folding mode is set, the folding and unfolding of the side mirrors is linked with the locking and unlocking of the doors.

- › **【Rear mirror look to the ground while reversing】** : you can turn on or off the reversing mode of the corresponding side mirror.

After the side mirror reversing mode is turned on, the side mirrors can automatically adjust to the stored position suitable for reversing by engaging the R gear; after exiting R gear, the side mirrors automatically return to the position before reversing.

After turning on the side mirror reversing mode, adjust the mirror angle of the corresponding side mirror in the state of R gear to make it more suitable for the field of vision for reversing, and then exit from the R gear to store the position for the side mirror reversing.

- › **【Adjust mirrors with steering wheel】** : you can use the steering wheel buttons to adjust the mirror angle of the side mirror. After adjustment, touch the **【Completed】** button.

Side mirror defroster function

When side mirrors are frosted or fogged, press the rear defroster button on the air conditioning control panel/tap the rear defroster button on the air conditioning setting interface, and the indicator light goes on and the side mirror defroster function is activated. Press/tap the rear defroster button again to turn off the defroster function.

The side mirror defroster function will be turned off automatically after it works for a period of time.

WARNING

After the defroster function of the side mirror is turned on, do not touch the mirror surface to avoid scalding.

Steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Adjustment method



1. Release the adjustment lever beneath the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to align it to your chest and make sure you can see all the instruments and indicator lights on the instrument cluster.
3. After adjusting, retract the lever back to lock the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, incorrect operation could result in an accident or serious injury.
- › After adjusting the steering wheel, ensure that it is securely locked in place. Otherwise, sudden movement of the steering wheel could result in an accident or serious injury.

Horn


Press the horn mark on the steering wheel or its surrounding area and the horn honks.

⚠ CAUTION

- › There is a front airbag inside the steering wheel. Do not hit the position around the horn hard to avoid the condition that the airbag cannot work normally during accident or the airbag is accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.
- › Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.

Steering wheel heating function

The steering wheel heating function can be enabled or disabled via the air conditioning setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

On the air conditioning setting interface, tap the heating button  near the steering wheel icon to enable or disable the steering wheel heating function. When the steering wheel heating function is turned on, the steering wheel icon turns red.

 **CAUTION**

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the steering wheel heating function for a long time to avoid causing under-voltage battery.

Roof rack

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Roof rack

To install a luggage rack on the roof rack, please read carefully the installation manual that comes with the luggage rack.

NOTICE

When the luggage rack is installed or used for carrying items, relevant requirements of local traffic regulations should be observed.

Roof rack bearing capacity

The maximum load weight of the roof rack is 50 kg; the maximum load weight of the roof rack is 35 kg when the vehicle is decelerating rapidly.

NOTICE

The load weight of the roof rack includes accessories such as the beam and other accessories.

WARNING

- › Items on the roof luggage rack must be secured firmly in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.
- › Loading goods on the roof luggage rack will raise the vehicle centre of gravity. Avoid high speed driving, sudden startup, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle due to incorrect operation of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.
- › When rather heavy or large objects are loaded on the roof luggage rack, changes in the vehicle centre of mass and wind resistance may affect its driving performance, and there is a risk of an accident. Therefore, you must adjust your driving style and speed according to the specific circumstances.
- › Drive at low speed in lateral wind. The vehicle profile and its high centre of gravity make it more sensitive to lateral gust, and reducing the vehicle speed will make it easier to control.
- › Do not overspeed, jolt, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. when driving off-road or in uneven terrain. This can cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death, as well as serious damage to the suspension and chassis of the vehicle.

- › Do not cross steep slopes, and it is better to drive straight up or down. The vehicle is more likely to roll over than to roll forward or backward.
- › The roof luggage rack can only be used with the sunroof closed. Otherwise, the roof luggage rack or the items loaded on it may cause injury to passengers.

Light control

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Light settings

You can set the functions related to the lighting through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Lighting】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Auto welcome】** : after enabling this function, with the power supply in OFF mode and the main light switch in AUTO mode, the doors are unlocked outside the vehicle (except for unlocking the door with the mechanical key), the vehicle exterior lights will illuminate for a while.
- › **【Power saving delay】** : you can set the time delay for the power saving function to take effect.

After the power supply is switched to OFF mode, if the power supply mode and door lock status do not change within the set time range, the power saving function will be automatically turned on to save power.

- › **【Roof light delay】** : you can set the delay time for the interior lights to go out after all doors are closed when the interior lights are on due to the door linked function.
- › **【Follow me home】** : you can set the continuous lighting time of the position lights and the low beam headlights after the “Follow me home” function is enabled.

Light control combination switch


Main light knob

i NOTICE

Before you lock and leave the vehicle, please turn the main light knob to the OFF or AUTO position to reduce the power consumption of the vehicle and prevent the draining of voltage from the battery thus affecting the normal use of the vehicle.




DOF97216C02B

- › Turn the main light knob to the clearance light  position to turn on the position light and the license plate light.

CAUTION

Do not use the position light instead of the low beam headlight when driving. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.

The position lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road in front of your vehicle or allow other vehicles and pedestrians to see your vehicle. Therefore, turn on the low beam headlights when it's dark or visibility is poor.

- › Turn the main light knob to the low beam headlight  position to turn on the low beam headlight and keep the position light and the license plate light on.
- › Turn main light knob to the AUTO position. The clearance lights and low beam headlights will be turned on or off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.

CAUTION

- › When visibility is affected in the day due to heavy fog, the lights may not illuminate automatically. Turn on the lights manually in this case.



- › Auto light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.

- › Turn the main light knob to the OFF position to turn off all vehicle lights.

Fog light knob

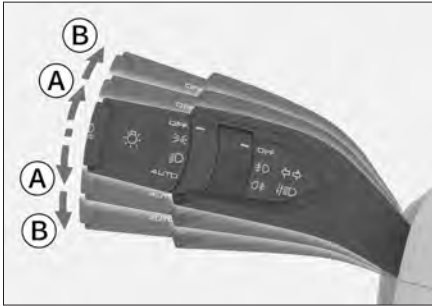


D9AA17A1B508

- › When the clearance lights (position lights, license plate lights) go on, turn the fog light knob to the front fog light position  to turn on the front fog lights.
- › When the low beam headlights or the front fog lights go on, turn the fog light knob to the rear fog light position  repeatedly to turn on or off the rear fog lights. When released, the knob will automatically return.

Light control

Turn signal and lane change signal



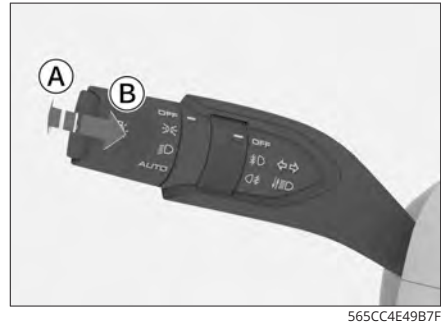
- Ⓐ Lane change signal
- Ⓑ Turn signal

› Lane change signal: slightly toggle the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and release it. The switch will return automatically to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal light will flash 3 times.

› Turn signal: slightly toggle the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and then release it. The switch will return automatically to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously. When the turn is finished, the turn signal light will turn off.

Slightly toggle the light control combination switch upwards or downwards to manually turn off the turn signal light.

High/low beam manual switching



- Ⓐ High beam headlights on
- Ⓑ High beam headlights flashing



› When the low beam headlights are on, press the light control combination switch away from the steering wheel to turn on or off the high beam headlights. The switch will automatically return to its original position when you release it.

› The high beam headlight goes on when you pull the light control combination switch up in a direction along the steering wheel. The switch will automatically return to its original position when you release it and the high beam headlights will go out. You can repeat this operation to make high beam headlights flash.

Auto low-high beam



The auto low-high beam function automatically switches between high and low beam headlights based on vehicle speed and the surrounding light conditions.

When the low beam headlights are on and the high beam headlights are off, press the auto low-high beam switch  to turn on or off the auto low-high beam function. After the function is activated, the auto high beam indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on in green.

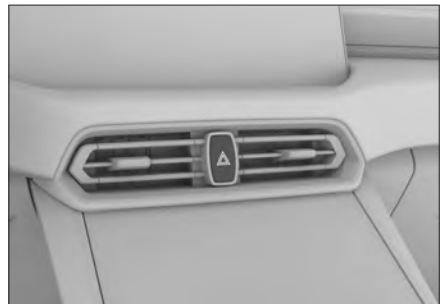
WARNING

Auto switch between low and high beam headlights is only an auxiliary function. The driver should manually switch between high and low beam headlights according to the light and visibility conditions if necessary in traffic or weather conditions. Manual intervention is required in the following cases:

- › Weather conditions are not conducive to driving, such as heavy fog or rain or snow.

- › You turn sharply or drive on the slope.
- › You are at a junction or you cannot see the opposite traffic completely, such as when the light of the opposite traffic is obscured by a collision barrier or when you are travelling on motorway.
- › You are driving in areas with poor lighting conditions and many buildings.
- › There are traffic participants with poor lighting around the road, such as pedestrians or non-motorized vehicles.
- › There are highly reflective objects near the road, such as traffic signs.
- › The rainfall and light sensor on the current windscreen is dirty, frosted or covered by labels.

Emergency flasher



In the event of vehicle failure or traffic accident, turn on the emergency flashers to warn other vehicles.

Light control

Press the switch to turn on or turn off the emergency flashers.

Daytime running light

To allow other drivers to see your vehicle more clearly, the daytime running lights automatically come on when the vehicle is in READY mode and the P gear position is exited.

The daytime running lights will go out in the following conditions:

- › The headlights are on.
- › Shift to the P gear position.
- › When the left or right turn signal light is on, the daytime running light on the corresponding side will go out.

WARNING

- › The daytime running lights are not designed for the needs of night-time driving.
- › The driver is always obliged to ensure that the vehicle is driving with the correct lights in compliance with traffic laws.

Leaving light

With the power supply in OFF mode and the master light switch in the automatic light position, if the current light intensity meets the conditions for the low beam headlamp to be on, the position lamp and the low beam headlamp will automatically illuminate for a period of time after the doors have been successfully locked from the outside of the vehicle (except for locking by the mechanical key) to ensure that you can leave the vehicle in the dark.

Front fog lights auxiliary lighting

This function can realize the automatic lighting of front fog light on the corresponding side of vehicle when turning a corner and the automatic lighting of all front fog lights when reversing, so as to better illuminate the surrounding environment.

The following conditions must be met in order to turn on the front fog lights auxiliary lighting:

- › The speed of the vehicle is less than 35 km/h.
- › The low beam headlights are turned on.
- › The turn indicator is turned on or the angle of steering wheel is greater than 60°.
- › The front fog lights are not turned on.

Emergency braking warning

If you perform emergency braking when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 50 km/h, the hazard warning lights flash fast to remind the approaching vehicle to avoid the risk timely.

Light height adjustment



138DB3D0F4F7

The headlight beam height is adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.

- › Turn the knob upwards to raise the height of the headlight beam.
- › Turn the knob downwards to lower the height of the headlight beam.

Interior lights


Reading lamp

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lamps for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, the under-voltage battery may be caused.



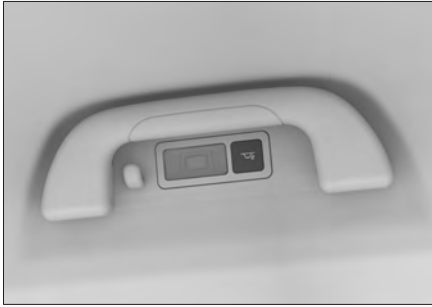
A76C2DF69E73



- › Touch the shade of the reading lamp on each side to turn on or off the corresponding reading lamp.
When the reading lamp is on, continuously touch the shade of the left or right reading lamp to adjust the brightness of the corresponding reading lamp. After the desired brightness is reached, stop touching the shade and the reading light will be set to the current brightness. After the reading lamp is turned off, the brightness returns to the default value the next time the reading lamp is turned on.
- › Touch the shade of the central reading lamp to turn on or off all reading lamps and roof lamps.
- › Touch the door control icon  to enable or disable the door control function.

With the door control function enabled, the reading lamps and roof lamps will go on or off automatically depending on the door status.

Light control

Side roof light



Press the roof light switch  or  to turn on or off the corresponding roof light.

With the door control function enabled, the roof light will turn on or turn off automatically according to the door condition.

Luggage-area light

When the tailgate is open or closed, the luggage-area lights turn on or off automatically.

Ambient light

The following settings can be made to the ambient light through the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Ambient Lighting】** on the multimedia display screen:

- › Ambient Lighting: To turn on or off the ambient light;

- › Intelligent Linkage: To turn on or off the intelligent linkage function; When this function is turned on, the ambient light will automatically illuminate depending on the door status or the intelligent driving status.
- › Brightness: To adjust the brightness of the ambient light;
- › Color Selection: To set the dynamic or static colour mode of the ambient light.

NOTICE

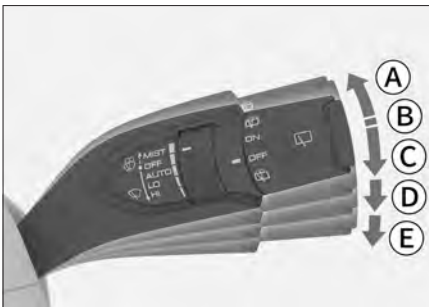
- › The ambient light brightness is not adjustable when the **【Rhythm】** is selected.
- › When the ambient light is on, the ambient light goes out when you put the vehicle in the reverse gear; when you exit from the reverse gear, the ambient light comes on.
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 90 km/h, multi-colour dynamic and following music rhythm automatically switch to static mode. The ambient light returns to its previous state when the vehicle speed drops below 80 km/h.
- › The ambient light setting interface may vary slightly depending on the model configuration.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Front wipers

Front wiper gear



275CCA3323B

Ⓐ Front wiper mist (MIST)

Move the wiper control combination switch upwards to the MIST position. Once you release it, it will return to its original position. The front wiper will operate once.

Ⓑ Front wiper off (OFF)

Ⓒ Automatic (AUTO)

Ⓓ Low speed (LO)

Ⓔ High speed (HI)

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object. Otherwise, the wiper blade or the internal structure of the wiper may be damaged.
- › Before using the wiper in the cold season, be sure to check whether the wiper blade is frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blade has been frozen on the windscreen, you should use it after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blade and wiper motor may be damaged.
- › When the wiper stops running due to snow and other reasons, please turn off the wiper and park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible, and then remove snow and other debris so that the wiper can work normally.

Adjustment of auto wipe frequency



4C411A8EFC4D

Wiper control

Turning the adjustment knob can change the sensitivity of the rainfall and light sensor to the rain, thereby changing the wipe frequency of the front wiper when it is at the automatic (AUTO) gear.

⚠ WARNING

- › The rainfall and light sensor may not fully recognize each fall of rain and activate front wipers. If the rain on the windscreen affects the vision, you should manually adjust front wiper position or scraping frequency duly as required.
- › When the automatic front wiper is in the AUTO position, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly if the windscreen near the inside rearview mirror is touched from outside or the windscreen is vibrated. Be careful not to get your fingers and other parts of your body caught in front wipers.
- › Do not place the automatic front wiper in the AUTO position when you wash the car or no front wiper is required to be used. Otherwise, front wipers may operate unexpectedly.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen near inside rearview mirrors is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object, otherwise it may affect the normal work of the auto wiper.
- › Sometimes, even if snowflakes come in contact with the rainfall and light sensor, the sensor may not operate normally and front wipers may not function, as snowflakes come in different shapes. The melted snow may cause front wipers to automatically operate.

Washing function



930465496923


Pull up and hold the wiper control combination switch towards the steering wheel, and the front wipers will use windscreen washer fluid to wipe the front windscreen. When it is released, the combination switch will return automatically to its original position.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid using the washer continuously for a long time. Otherwise, the washing motor may be damaged.
To protect the washing motor, the washer may automatically shut down after a period of continuous operation.
- › When the washer fluid is insufficient, replenish it. In the cold season, add appropriate washer fluid to ensure that it will not freeze. Otherwise, not only the washing function will not be available, but also the related parts will be frozen.
- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wiper.
- › The blade cannot get contact with oily cleaning agent. They may react chemically which may cause blade deformity.

Rear wiper



- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the ON position and the rear wiper will turn on.
- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the rear windscreen cleaning position  and hold. The rear wiper will wipe the rear windscreen using screen washer. Release the control knob and it will return automatically to its previous position.
- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the OFF position to turn off the rear wiper.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use products that produce a coating on the windscreen (e.g. crystallised or coated washing liquid, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, this may cause the wiper to bounce and rattle when wiping.

Wiper control

› Do not allow the wiper blades to come into contact with oil-based cleaning products, as this may cause a chemical reaction and lead to severe deformation of the wiper blades.

Front wiper heating function

For vehicles with front wiper heating function, the front wiper heating function will be activated or deactivated simultaneously with the rear window defroster function of the A/C system. When this function is enabled, the situation for the front wiper blade frozen onto the windshield will be improved gradually.

WARNING

When the front wiper heating function is enabled, the front windshield glass lower part or the side of the front pillar will become very hot. Touching front wiper is prohibited so as to avoid burns.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, please do not use the function for a long time, to avoid the battery subject to lack of electricity.

Front windshield washer nozzle heating function

For vehicles equipped with the front windshield washer nozzle heating function, the function will be enabled or disabled simultaneously with the rear defrosting function of the air conditioning system. After the function is enabled, the situation that the front windshield washer nozzle is frozen and blocked can be gradually alleviated.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, please do not use the function for a long time, to avoid the battery subject to lack of electricity.

Front wiper and washer settings

You can set the interval from the activation of the washing function to the activation of the front wiper via the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【Body】** → **【Front Wiper】** interface on the multimedia display.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

A/C settings

A/C setting interface

i NOTICE


- › The A/C setting interface may vary based on vehicle configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- › The A/C system consumes battery power when it is in operation and its use will reduce the range.
- › When the traction battery is too low in its power, the power of the A/C system will be limited in order to extend the range of the vehicle, and the A/C comfort will be reduced. The function of the A/C system will return to normal after the traction battery is restored.

› Under extreme operating conditions (high or low ambient temperatures, long-time slope climbing, etc.), the A/C may be limited in its power or even stop working to ensure the vehicle's power performance.

› Using the A/C while charging the vehicle will affect the charging efficiency.

To ensure the charging efficiency, the A/C may be limited or even cut off when the charging power is insufficient.

You can set the A/C working status through the A/C setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.

- › Touch the OFF button  to turn on or off the A/C system.
- › Touch the AUTO button to activate the automatic mode. In this mode, the airflow distribution mode and the airflow can automatically adjust to reach the set temperature.





i NOTICE



If the airflow distribution mode and the airflow automatically adjusted by the A/C system cannot meet your demand, you can perform manual adjustment; in this case, the system will exit the AUTO mode, and the indicator light will go out.



A/C system

› Touch the A/C button to enable or disable the cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the cooling mode is activated. In this mode, the interior temperature and humidity may be reduced.



› Touch the A/C MAX button to enable or disable the maximum cooling mode. If the corresponding indicator light turns on, it indicates that the maximum cooling mode is activated. In this case, with the cooling mode enabled, the A/C system will operate at the minimum temperature, with the maximum airflow, and in the internal circulation mode and face-blowing mode.


› Touch the face-blowing mode button , the feet and face-blowing mode button , the feet-blowing mode button , or the feet-blowing and defroster mode button  to select the corresponding airflow distribution mode.


› Touch the warming button  or the cooling button  to adjust the temperature.

Also, you can slide at the space between the warming button  and the cooling button  to adjust the temperature.


You can adjust the temperature by sliding both fingers up and down along the A/C setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display screen.


› Touch the synchronization button  or the disconnection button  to activate or deactivate the partition control mode.

If the synchronization indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the partition control mode is deactivated. In this case, the front passenger's A/C temperature remains the same as the driver's A/C temperature. Also, when the driver's A/C temperature is adjusted, the front passenger's A/C temperature is adjusted simultaneously.

If the disconnection indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the partition control mode is activated. In this case, when the driver's A/C temperature is adjusted, the front passenger's A/C temperature is not affected.

When the front passenger's A/C temperature is adjusted, the partition control mode automatically turns on.

› Touch the front defroster button  to enable or disable the front defroster function. If the corresponding indicator light turns on, it indicates that the front defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.


- › Touch the rear defroster button  to enable or disable the rear defroster function. If the corresponding indicator light turns on, it indicates that the rear defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting of the rear windscreen can be gradually eliminated. The rear defroster function will be off automatically after operating for a period of time, and the corresponding indicator light will go out.



WARNING


Once the rear defroster function is activated, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.


CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to prevent the draining of the battery voltage.

- › Touch the air flow button  to show the air flow adjustment panel. You can adjust the air flow by touching or sliding at the area on the air flow adjustment panel. You can adjust the airflow by sliding both fingers side to side along the A/C setting interface on the auxiliary instrument panel display.

- › Touch the internal circulation button  or the external circulation button  to make the A/C system switch between the internal and external circulation modes.


If the internal circulation indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the internal circulation mode is activated.

If the external circulation indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the external circulation mode is activated. In this case, the air outside the vehicle can be introduced into the vehicle.

NOTICE

- › Normally, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.
- › The internal circulation mode should be used under circumstances such as driving through a tunnel, in traffic jams, dirty air outside the vehicle or when quick cooling and heating is desired.
- › It is recommended to switch to the external circulation mode if inside air is heavily polluted or the interior is fogged up.

More A/C setting interface

Touch the more button  on the A/C setting interface to show the more A/C setting interface.

A/C system

You can make the following settings through the more A/C setting interface:

- › **【AQS】** : you can enable or disable the automatic air quality control (AQS) function. After this function is activated, the A/C system automatically detects the air quality and automatically switches between the internal and external circulation modes.
- › **【Negative ions】** : you can enable or disable the negative ion purification function. When this function is activated, the negative ions generated by the A/C system will circulate with the air in the vehicle, which can effectively purify the air and increase comfort.

NOTICE

- › Do not close the panel outlets after activating the negative ion purification mode. Otherwise, negative ions will not enter the vehicle, and air purification will not be realized.
- › Check and replace the A/C filter regularly to maintain the best effect of air purification inside the vehicle.
- › **【Automatic front defrost】** : you can enable or disable the automatic front defrost function. When the automatic front defrost function is turned on and the A/C is in AUTO mode, the system automatically adjusts the status of the A/C to prevent the front windscreen from fogging.

- › **【A/C comfort】** : you can set the comfort effect of the A/C system in AUTO mode.

【Economy】 : compared with the standard mode, the economy mode provides the A/C system with softer cooling or heating effect and lower airflow.

【Standard】 : the A/C system automatically controls the outlet air temperature and airflow according to the temperature set by the user.

【Strong】 : compared with the standard mode, the strong mode provides the A/C system with stronger cooling or heating effect and higher airflow.

Precautions for using A/C

CAUTION

- › Check the radiator and the A/C condenser on a regular basis. Use a low-pressure water gun or a soft brush to remove the leaves, insects and dust from their front surfaces. Otherwise, these objects will block the air flow, thereby reducing the cooling effect.
- › Running the A/C regularly keeps the compressor and seals well lubricated and prevents leakage. Therefore, even in the cold season when A/C is not required, it is necessary to run the A/C at least once a week for more than 10 minutes each time.

- › If the A/C system does not cool as well as before, head to the authorised service centre for maintenance.
- › Direct discharge of refrigerant into the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and the refrigerant should be recovered by trained and certified technicians using appropriate containers.

i NOTICE

About the A/C odour

› Source of the odour

Internal and external air exchange should be carried out for A/C as its long-term use may gather dirt which will go mouldy after a long time, resulting in odour.

The A/C filter will accumulate water vapour, dust, etc. after use for a long time, resulting in odour.

› Recommended measures

When the outside air is fresh, use the external circulation mode so that the air in the vehicle may maintain good ventilation.

It is recommended to turn off the A/C compressor (A/C), keep the blower running for 3 to 5 minutes before the A/C system is shut down so that the A/C system may be dry to prevent mould breeding.

When you feel the odour is very strong, you are recommended to head to the authorised service centre for check. Clean or replace the A/C filter element, if necessary.

Cabin cleaning system

The cabin cleaning function allows you to introduce the air outside the vehicle into the vehicle remotely through the mobile phone APP before entering the vehicle, so as to achieve the effect of clean ventilation in the vehicle.

The cabin cleaning function will automatically turn off after operating for a period of time or when the door is opened.

To enable the cabin cleaning function, the following conditions must be met:

- › The signal of the Internet of Vehicles is good.
- › The vehicle is locked and the vehicle anti-theft function is activated.
- › The charging gun is not inserted into the vehicle charging port.

! CAUTION

Please do not use this function when you are driving the vehicle in a harsh environment.

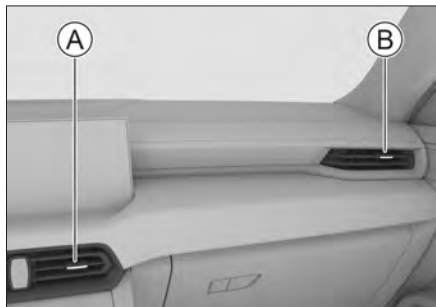
i NOTICE

A low traction battery level may result in the function not being available or ending abnormally.

A/C system

A/C outlets



Front outlets



① Central outlets

② Side outlets

Move air vanes of centre outlets to regulate the airflow direction.

Move air vanes as indicated by the left-to-close marking  or right-to-close marking  to the limit position to close the outlets.

Rear outlets

The rear outlets operate in the same way as the front outlets.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Instructions for use

Turn on or off the wireless charging for mobile phones via the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Wireless Charging】** on the multimedia display screen.

After turning on the wireless charging function for mobile phones, make sure that the front doors are closed, switch to the power supply mode ON or start the vehicle. Then the mobile phone placed in the charging area can be charged.



DAE77C249C46

i NOTICE

- › In order to achieve a better charging effect, it is necessary to ensure that the charging coil of the mobile phone is facing the qi identification Φ .
- › If a foreign object falls into the bottom of the charging area, open the storage box and remove the foreign object through the hole at the bottom of the box.

i NOTICE

- › This function is not applicable to all mobile phones, but only to mobile phones that have passed the "Qi" official standard certification and can be normally placed in the charging area.
- › Only one mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- › On bumpy roads, intermittent stopping and resuming of wireless charging may occur. If the mobile phone deviates from the charging area and stops charging, it is necessary to move the mobile phone back to the chargeable area.
- › It is normal that wireless charging devices and mobile phones will get hot during charging.

When the temperature is too high, the system will stop charging, and will continue charging after the temperature drops.

Mobile phone wireless charging

1

Operation

- › If the phone breaks down, it may also cause failure to charge. Other mobile phones that meet the requirements can be used for wireless charging detection to confirm whether the mobile phone is faulty.
- › If the mobile phone is equipped with protective covers or accessories that do not support wireless charging, they shall be removed first; otherwise, the phone cannot be charged normally.
- › To prevent the battery from losing power, do not use the wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not started.

WARNING

- › For the sake of safety, drivers shall not perform charging related operations during driving.
- › Do not place coins, keys, chip cards and other metal objects in the charging area. Otherwise, metal objects may be heated, which may lead to abnormal charging or cause safety accidents.

If metal foreign objects are found in the charging area during charging, do not remove them by hand immediately to avoid scalding your fingers. Turn off the wireless charging function immediately, and wait a few minutes before removing foreign objects.

- › If you need to use the charging area as a storage box, turn off the wireless charging function.

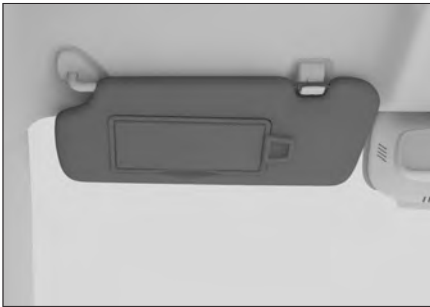
CAUTION

- › Do not dump any liquid in the charging area, so as to avoid the liquid entering the wireless charging system through the gap of rubber pad, which may lead to system failure.
- › Do not modify the wireless charging system to avoid damage to the vehicle or accidents.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Sun visor

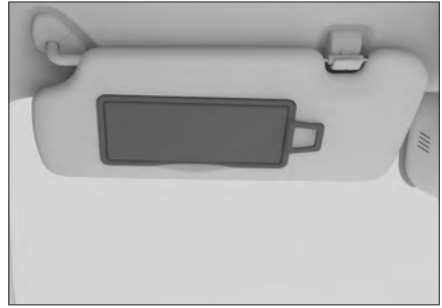


To block sunlight from straight ahead, flip down the sun visor.



To block sunlight coming in from the side, flip down the sun visor, unhook it and push it to the side.

Vanity mirror

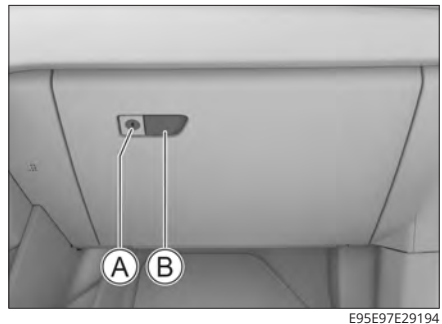


Open the cover to use the vanity mirror set inside the sunshade.

Close the cover when not using the vanity mirror.

Storage devices

Storage box



- Ⓐ Storage box lock
- Ⓑ Storage box opening button

Insert the mechanical key into the lock hole of the storage box and turn the key to lock or unlock the storage box.

Interior equipment

After unlocking, press the storage box opening button, and the storage box will automatically open.

With the storage box open, flip the storage box up until it locks in place to close the storage box.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the storage box is closed when driving. Otherwise, such items may be thrown out from the storage box and lead to an injury in the case of an accident or emergency braking.

Front armrest storage case



BC09C0DFCAB1

Press the front armrest storage case switch and the armrest opens to both sides to reveal the storage case.

Spectacle case



A6357296D8CE

Press the spectacle case to open it. When placing the glasses, it is required to fold the two glass temples normally, with the lenses facing forward and the temples facing upward. Otherwise, the glasses may fall off when opening the glasses box.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the spectacle case has been closed when driving.

i NOTICE

Certain oversized sunglasses models may not fit into this case.

Front row cup holder

Press one end of the front cup holder cover near to the bright strip and the cover opens slowly to reveal the cup holder.



2FDBFB18CD70

The cup holder clamp in the cup holder can be taken out upwards.



7B04C14C5912

⚠ WARNING

- › When placing hot drinks, please be careful to avoid burns.
- › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder. Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, which may cause an accident or personal injury.

Please make sure the beverage cans are intact and the lids are closed. Otherwise, the liquid in the beverage cans may spill, with a risk of damaging the electronic equipment in the car, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in the event of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Bottle holder

There is a bottle holder on the inside of each door, which is used only for placing the sealed bottle container.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than bottles inside the bottle holder. Otherwise, in case of an accident or emergency braking, such items may be dislodged from the bottle holder, resulting in bodily injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the lid of the bottle is covered to avoid spilling liquid.

Interior equipment

Rear cup holder



4F3CB3866BC8

Tilt the rear seat armrest to the lowest position to use the rear cup holder.

⚠ WARNING

- › When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.
- › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder. Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, which may cause an accident or personal injury.

Make sure the beverage cans are intact and the lids are closed, otherwise the liquid in the beverage cans may spill, with a risk of damaging the electronic equipment in the car, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in the event of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Luggage cover

Instructions for use

The luggage cover can be used to protect privacy and luggage from direct exposure to sunlight.

For using, pull out the cover and hang it in the fixed slot at both sides.



532BE9D8C6B3

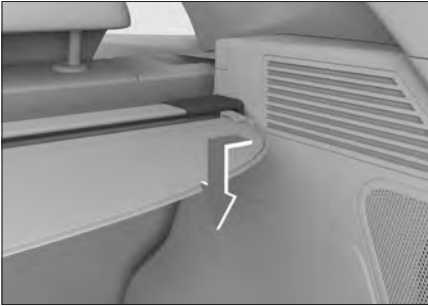
⚠ WARNING

- › Don't put anything on the luggage cover. Otherwise, damage may occur to the cover.
- › Don't let children climb up the cover. Otherwise, damage to the cover and even child death may occur.

Disassembly methods

The cover can be removed to make a greater storage space available.

Press one end of the cover to separate it from the fixed slot and then remove it.



C05D46FAF538

⚠ CAUTION

When removing the cover, please be careful not to scratch or damage peripheral parts.

The installation method is contrary to the disassembly method.

⚠ WARNING

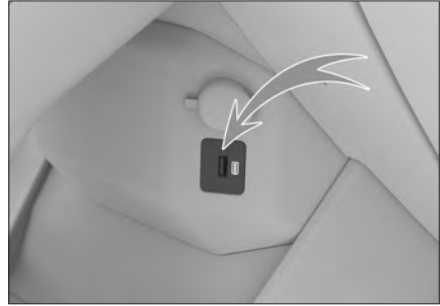
Make sure the cover is firmly installed. Failure to do so may result in injury to persons in the event of an emergency braking or collision.

Power supply socket

USB Type-A power supply socket

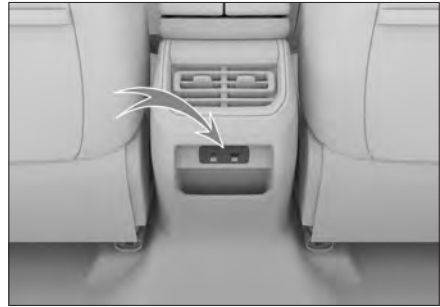
Located in the hollowed-out place on

the right side of the auxiliary instrument panel



ED64B8458178

Located beside the rear air conditioning outlet



B618E9D6C358

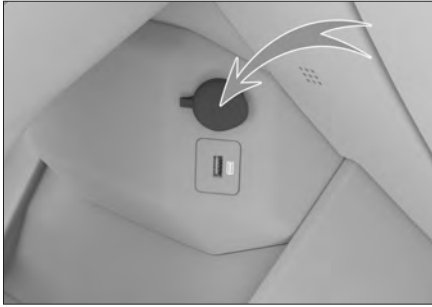
The power supply can be used when it is in the ON mode. This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

Standby power supply

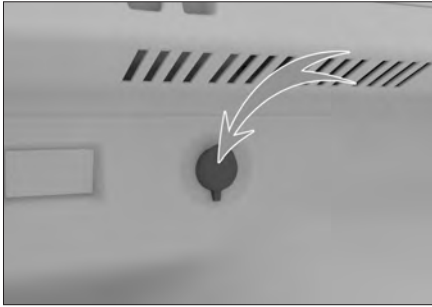
Located in the hollowed-out place of

Interior equipment

the auxiliary instrument panel



Located on the side wall plate at the luggage area



When the power supply is in ON mode, just open the cover for use.

This power supply can provide a 12 V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

Power supply of driving recorder



It is located near the inside rearview mirror.

The power supply can be used when it is in the ON mode.

This power supply is designed to provide a 5 V DC power supply for driving recorders whose rated power is less than or equal to 10 W.

⚠ WARNING

For driving safety, be careful not to block the line of sight to prevent danger when installing a driving recorder.

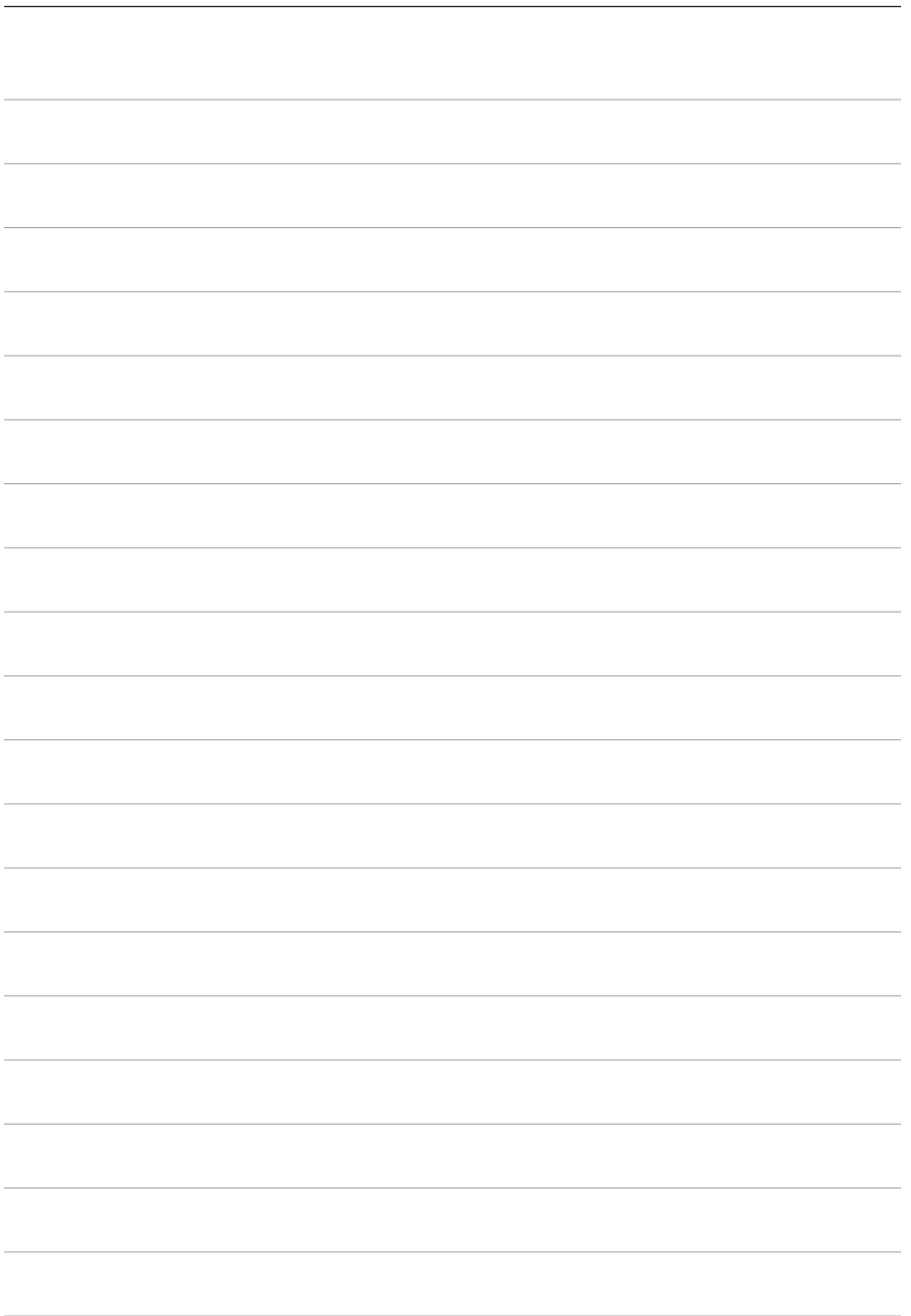
⚠ WARNING

Flammable gases and heaters must be kept away from the power supply socket.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not allow liquids such as beverages or foreign objects to enter the power supply socket, otherwise it may cause malfunctions such as short circuits, etc. If the power supply socket has a cover, close the cover when it is not in use.
- › If you use an accessory that exceeds the rated power, the vehicle fuse may be burnt out.
- › Do not connect precision devices, highly sensitive equipment or other important equipment to this power supply socket.

- › Do not use this power supply in humid and high-temperature conditions.
- › Don't use it in parallel or in series with any other power supply.
- › If you find any abnormal condition (e.g. unusually high temperatures, smoke, odours, etc.) in the course of use, halt use immediately and contact authorised service centre for inspection and maintenance.
- › Modifying or repairing this power supply system without authorization is forbidden.
- › The external harness should be waterproof and sealed.



2

Driving

Driving procedures.....	96	Intelligent monitoring system	
Advice on driving in harsh envi-		179
ronments	102	Hill descent control system	
Advice on driving during run-in		(HDC)	181
period	108	Driving assist system.....	182
Hybrid vehicle	109	Emission control system.....	186
Power supply switch	115	Head up display system (HUD)	
Starting and shutting down the		190
vehicle	116	Instrument panel.....	192
Parking brake	118	Instrument panel indicator	
Automatic transmission	121	lights	196
Driving mode.....	126	Power management system	206
Driving with a trailer.....	128		
Power steering mode.....	135		
Sound prompt system	136		
Parking assist system.....	137		
Intelligent driving assist infor-			
mation system	147		
Tyre pressure monitoring sys-			
tem	175		
Driver fatigue alert system..	177		

Driving procedures

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Before driving

Removing debris

Remove the snow and fallen leaves, etc. before driving.

Checking vehicle conditions

Check tyres, fluid, lights and body appearance before driving to ensure your safe and pleasant driving.

If your vehicle requires maintenance or repair, get in touch with the authorised service centre in a timely manner.

Confirming vehicle doors and bonnet status

Before driving, confirm all vehicle doors are closed. If a vehicle door has not been closed properly, it may open unexpectedly during the driving and cause an accident.

Before driving, if you have opened the bonnet, confirm that the bonnet has been locked down. If the bonnet has not been locked properly, it may open during driving and cause an accident.

Placing objects in-vehicle

On the instrument panel

Do not place any item on the instrument panel. The items placed on the instrument panel may not only obstruct the driver's view, but also affect the starting off and safe driving, which may lead to accidents.

The driver's feet well

Do not place any items at the feet well of the driver. Items placed at the driver's feet well may be trapped under pedals, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle, which leads to an accident.

If you want to use a floor mat, choose a suitable floor mat. If the selected floor mat shape and its layout position are inappropriate or if the floor mat is double stacked, pedal performance may be affected, which could lead to problems in starting the vehicle, braking, or difficulties in changing gear, and could result in an accident.

Under the seat

Do not place any items under the seat. Items placed under the seat will make it difficult to adjust the seat position or fasten the seat, which can easily lead to an accident.

Seat backrest

Do not place cushions and other items between the seat backrest and the back of the human body. Otherwise, the correct driving posture will be affected; besides, in the event of a vehicle collision, seat belts and head restraints will not function properly and provide full protection, and even serious life-threatening injuries will occur.

On the window glass

Do not attach decorative items like vacuum suction cups to window glass.

Vacuum suction cups can act as a lens, leading to a higher risk of fires.

Precautions for driving

No speeding

The vehicle shall not exceed the speed indicated by speed limit signs or mark lines.

No overloading

Overloaded driving is dangerous.

Do not carry passengers or goods more than what is on the indicated maximum limit. Do not carry passengers in the luggage area or the trunk.

No fatigue driving

Fatigue driving is extremely dangerous as the judgement, view and attention of driver in fatigue state will drop substantially. It is likely to bring about severe accident.

Not shutting down the vehicle

The brake assist device and power steering system will not function if the vehicle is shut down while driving, which may lead to deterioration of braking efficiency, and cause severe accident.

Not turning the steering wheel fully in either direction and holding it there for an extended period of time

Failure to do so may reduce the efficiency of power steering system, or even damage the system.

Not applying the brake for a long time

While driving, do not continuously step on the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to premature wear-and-tear in the brake pad or overheating in the brakes, thereby affecting braking efficiency and possibly leading to accidents as a result.

The brake emitting a warning sound

The disc brake will emit a warning sound when the brake pad wears and needs to be replaced.

If you hear a rattling sound while braking, do not continue driving. Otherwise, this will severely wear the brake disk, damage the brake parts and affect the braking efficiency or even lead to an accident.

Flat tyre

Do not continue to drive under the flat tyre condition. Driving with one or more flat tyres is extremely dangerous since it heightens the probability of accidents. In addition, tyres, wheels, suspension and vehicle body will be damaged. At this moment, replace the tyre immediately.

When any of the following situations occurs, check if vehicle tyres are punctured or have gone flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

If a tyre is flat or broken during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or turning the steering wheel sharply may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

A strong impact to the lower body, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle

When the lower body, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle suffer a strong impact, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe spot and inspect the vehicle. Check for leakage in brake fluid and fuel, and for deformation or damage to suspension, tyres, wheels, power battery pack, drive system, etc. If you find signs of leakage or damage, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to accidents.

When going downhill

Using engine assist braking

If you continuously depress the brake pedal while moving downslope, the brake may overheat, thereby compromising braking efficiency and making the occurrence of accidents more likely.

When descending a slope, if the vehicle is not in energy recovery state (e.g. when the power battery is fully charged), use the manual mode (M) or switch the driving mode to sport mode to start the engine for assisted braking.

Vehicle shutdown or neutral coasting prohibited

The braking force assist device and power steering system will not work if the vehicle is shut down while driving down-slope. In this scenario, braking efficiency will be compromised and you feel the steering wheel heavy, making the occurrence of accidents more likely.

Driving on uneven road surfaces

When stopping the vehicle on a curb or on a road surface with a height difference, make sure that the tyre is not crushed and deformed by the curb or other obstacles.

When the vehicle must pass a curb, speed bumps or a similar obstacle, you shall try to slow down along the vertical angle of the obstacle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tyre (especially to the side wall of the tyre).

Driving in the following road conditions may cause damage to the bumper. Slow down and drive carefully.

- › Road sections with steps such as parking lot entrances and exits;
- › Steep slopes such as sharp turns in multi-story parking lots;
- › Uneven and rutted roads;
- › Sections of road where there are pot-holes;
- › Driving from a flat section to a ramp, or from a ramp to a flat section;

- › Parking on a road with speed bumps or along a curb.

Driving on slippery road surfaces, such as wet, snowy or icy road surfaces

Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, or turning steering wheel sharply on slippery road surfaces may cause vehicle tyres to skid and the vehicle to go out of control, thereby causing an accident.

In upshifting or downshifting, the engine speed changes significantly, which can easily cause the vehicle to slide sideways and thus cause an accident.

In cold weather, you shall slow down when driving in areas that are prone to freezing, such as bridges and shady areas.

Driving on flooded roads

Be careful while driving on a flooded road.

Driving on a flooded road may lead to short circuit of electrical components or damage to electrical elements, resulting in a major accident.

While you drive on a flooded road, the brake pads will become wet and braking efficiency will be reduced, which can easily lead to accidents. Step gently and repeatedly on the brake pedal in order to warm up the brake until full brake performance has been recovered.

Driving procedures

Precautions for passengers

Moving within the vehicle is forbidden

It is forbidden for the passenger to leave his or her seat, or to move around inside the vehicle. Otherwise, during emergency braking, the passenger's body or head, etc., may suffer injurious impact.

Do not extend your hands or head outside the vehicle window or sunroof

If you stretch your hands or head out of the vehicle, it is prone to hitting against the window frame when braking the vehicle in emergency or closing the window. In this case, it may cause serious injury or even death.

Do not carry child passengers on your lap

When riding as a passenger, do not carry infant or child passengers on your lap even if you are already wearing a seat belt. Further, do not surround or enclose the infant or child using any part of the seat belt; this may cause grievous injury or even death during collisions or emergency braking.

Child passengers must not be allowed to operate equipment such as vehicle doors, vehicle windows and the sunroof

If child passengers are allowed to operate doors, windows and sunroof, they are at risk of clipping their hands, heads, necks, etc., in the operation, which will result in a serious personal injury.

If the vehicle door is opened during the driving, children, if not restrained correctly, could fall out of the vehicle, consequently causing serious injuries and even death.

Please use a child safety lock and a window lock switch to prevent children from accidents because of an incorrect operation.

Parking the vehicle

Do not park near flammable materials

Do not drive or stop on a road with a lot of flammable materials such as grass or scrap paper.

Wood or plywood placed too close behind the vehicle may cause a fire.

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in poorly ventilated places

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in a poorly ventilated area such as a garage. This may cause exhaust gas to accumulate, which may lead to carbon monoxide poisoning, causing serious personal injury and even death.

Economic driving

Predictable driving

Maintain a proper distance with the front running vehicle and avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. The stable vehicle speed can increase the range.

Avoiding unnecessary weight

Driving with a heavy load and overloading will increase energy consumption. Before driving, remove unnecessary items from the vehicle.

Checking tyre pressure periodically

Too small tyre pressure will increase the rolling resistance, thereby increasing the energy consumption while increasing the tyre wear.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and the best economy of your vehicle.

Turning off temporarily unnecessary electrical components

Turn off temporarily unnecessary functions such as the A/C, seat heating and rear window defroster to reduce power use.

Closing windows and sunroof

Opening the windows or the sunroof increases drag, keep them closed when not needed to reduce the energy consumption.

Coasting

The accelerator pedal should be released when approaching the red traffic light or driving downhill, allowing the vehicle to coast by inertia.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Driving in foggy weather

Turn on the fog lamps

While driving in fog, you should turn on the fog lamps.

Sound horn to warn pedestrians and vehicles

If you hear the horn of other vehicles, respond immediately by honking your horn to indicate your position.

Drive at low speed and look out for safety

When driving in foggy weather, try to travel at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Do not wipe fog on the glass during vehicle running

Due to large temperature difference inside and outside the cab, mist may condensates on the inside surface of the windscreen that can affect driver's sight. In this case, you can use the A/C defrosting function or open the vehicle windows a little to have the same air temperature inside and outside the vehicle. This will prevent condensation to form on the inside surface of windscreen.

If you wish to wipe away the condensation on the windscreen glass, please do so only after bringing the vehicle to a stop. Never try to do so while driving the vehicle.

Driving in the rain

Please drive carefully on slippery road surfaces

As poor vision, foggy windscreen and slippery roads are likely to occur when running on rainy days, please drive carefully.

When performing emergency braking, steering and accelerating on a slippery road, tyres may slip, making it difficult to control the vehicle, which may lead to an accident.

While driving in rain, water film can form between the tyre and the ground. At this time the tyre can easily lose its grip, so for safe driving you should slow down.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

Try to avoid driving in a heavy rain or a rainstorm.

Fording drive

Precautions for fording drive

- › Before fording drive, you shall confirm the depth of the gathered water on the surface. If there is more water or the water depth is unknown, take a detour and not go through a direct course.
- › Analyse the road conditions and do not drive into an unfamiliar area where there may be hidden obstacles such as ditches or manholes
- › Drive slowly when driving through water (do not exceed 10 km/h). Do not stop or change gears.
- › When driving through an intersection, avoid allowing any wave made by the preceding vehicle to cover the front grille of your vehicle.
- › When fording, if a fault occurs that causes the vehicle to be powered off (shut down) and fail to drive, do not attempt to start the vehicle again at this time. Please consult an authorised service centre immediately for treatment.

Inspection and maintenance after fording

Promptly do the following after safely driving through water:

- › Step on the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.
- › Test the horn.
- › Test all the vehicle's lights.
- › Take the vehicle to an authorised service centre as soon as possible for a regular inspection. During fording drive, water may enter the internal parts of the transmission system and dilute the grease, which may cause a system failure.

CAUTION

- › Fording drive is for emergencies only. Do not do so regularly.
- › Fording drive may damage the engine and electrical components.

In hot weather

Hot weather and high temperature in summer are bad for the normal vehicle running and the health of driver. To ensure driving safety, the driver shall pay attention to the following items:

Advice on driving in harsh environments

To prevent the engine from overheating

The engine is prone to overheating in the hot season due to higher ambient temperature. Therefore, please step up the inspection and maintenance of the engine cooling system, and remove debris embedded in the radiator chips.

Preventing flat tyre

As air pressure in the vehicle tyre rises with temperature increase, flat tyre is likely to occur in case of hot weather and high temperature in hot season.

If you experience a flat tyre in the course of the drive, hold the steering wheel securely, step gently on the brake pedal to decelerate, and avoid actions such as emergency braking or sudden steering. Failure to adhere to the advice may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Preventing sunstroke

Strong sunlight and high temperature in hot season easily lead to sunstroke. Keep the driving room well ventilated and prohibit fatigue driving.

WARNING

Never leave a child in the vehicle unattended.

- › Leaving children alone in the vehicle during hot seasons can easily cause heat stroke, dehydration, personal injury or even death.

- › If the child, left alone in the vehicle, plays with matches, lighters other items, it is easy to cause vehicle fire accidents.

CAUTION

When parking the vehicle, do not leave items such as lighters, spray can, soft drink cans, spectacles, etc., inside the vehicle.

- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, a leakage of gas from the lighter, spray cans or cracks in these containers can lead to fire.
- › Should a soft drink can burst inside the vehicle, its contents may splash onto electrical components and cause short circuit.
- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, it is easy to make resin lens or glasses deformation, resulting in crack.

Driving in cold weather

In cold weather, vehicles may accumulate snow or ice and moving parts such as door handles, windows, side mirrors and wipers may be frozen. To protect your vehicle from freezing and to use it normally, please follow the suggestions below to ensure the best possible driving experience in cold weather.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Preparations before driving

Before the cold weather comes or when driving to cold areas, please make the following preparations:

- › Check that the windscreen washer fluid is suitable for the local temperature to prevent damage to the vehicle caused by frozen washer fluid.
- › Check the coolant type. Please use the coolant specified for this vehicle to ensure that it has good anti-freeze protection. (▷ Page 325)
- › Check the oil type. Please use the oil specified for this vehicle. (▷ Page 324)
- › The battery performance decreases in cold weather. Please contact the authorised service centre for battery inspection to ensure that there is sufficient power to start the vehicle.
- › According to different driving conditions, you can prepare emergency supplies in advance, such as signal flashers, snow removal shovels, window scrapers and jumper cables.

A more comfortable driving experience can be obtained by the following methods:

- › Start the vehicle in advance and turn on the air-conditioning, seat heating and other functions to make the interior more comfortable.
- › Pay attention to removing snow and water stains from door handles after parking to prevent them from freezing.

- › In cold weather, the road surface may be covered with snow or ice. In order to improve vehicle passability and reduce vehicle sideslip, you can contact the authorised service centre to install winter tyres or snow chains.

Winter tyres

When the temperature is low in cold weather, due to the special characteristics of the standard tyre (tyre width, rubber composition and tyre tread, etc.), the tyre elasticity decreases, further weakening the traction and braking force. At the same time, the tyre noise will be increased, even leading to serious standard tyre cracks, abnormal wear and tear and other permanent damage. Use winter tyres when the temperature is below 7°C in cold weather. Winter tyres can greatly improve handling stability and braking responsiveness and shorten the braking distance.

NOTICE

All-season tyres with the M+S mark may offer good performance in cold weather but are usually still not as good as winter tyres. Use winter tyres when driving on snowy or icy roads.

WARNING

Though winter tyres improve vehicle handling, you must still drive with care and not take risks.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › Adjust your speed and driving based on visibility, weather and traffic conditions.
- › Do not exceed the speed or load limit marked on the winter tyres.

CAUTION

Winter tyres with a heavily worn tread, or ageing winter tyres (even if the tread not worn out) will weaken their performance in cold weather significantly. Consult your tyre supplier to find out the specific standards for changing your winter tyres.

Instructions for using winter tyres:

- › Obey all relevant laws and regulations in the country where you are driving.
- › The four wheels must have winter tyres installed at the same time.
- › Only use winter tyres that are the same size as your standard tyres.
- › Only use winter tyres with the same model, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern.
- › Only use winter tyres in cold weather.
- › Comply with all limits for the winter tyres (such as maximum speed and load); otherwise, tyre damage or a traffic accident may be caused.
- › Do not reverse the direction of rotation of the tyres.

Snow chains

The use of snow chains is regulated by the standards of each country or region. Install snow chains in accordance with local laws and regulations.

Only fit snow chains to the drive wheels and do not fit them to just one wheel. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when fitting the snow chains, and tighten them appropriately.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when installing snow chains:

- › Improper size or installation of tyre chains will damage the vehicle brake pipeline, suspension, body and tyres, etc. Choose suitable snow chains and install them properly.
- › When fitting snow chains, park the vehicle on flat ground in a safe place, turn on the hazard warning lights and place a warning triangle behind the vehicle.
- › Turn the vehicle power supply to OFF and apply the parking brake before fitting snow chains.
- › Do not install snow chains on an emergency wheel or small spare tyre.
- › Do not install snow chains on a tyre with insufficient pressure.
- › Be careful not to damage the aluminium rims when installing snow chains.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

Take the following precautions when driving a vehicle with snow chains:

- › Do not drive faster than 40 km/h or the maximum speed specified by the manufacturer of the snow chains, whichever is lower. Slow down to less than 20 km/h before entering a curve or turning to prevent losing control of the vehicle.
- › For safe driving, after fitting the snow chains and driving 0.5 to 1.0 km, check whether the chains have been installed correctly. If the snow chains have loosened, they must be tightened or reinstalled.
- › Snow chains may impair vehicle handling. In order to prevent an accident, avoid sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking as far as possible.
- › If you hear the snow chains knocking on the body or chassis during driving, stop as soon as possible to inspect and re-tighten them. If you can still hear the sound, slow down until the sound disappears.
- › Avoid driving on tarmac or potholes.
- › Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that you can control the vehicle.

- › Remove the snow chains when driving on snowy roads; otherwise, they may affect driving performance and severely damage tyre.

Driving tips

In cold weather, please drive with due care and attention to the snow and ice on the road.

- › When driving on snowy roads, snow may adhere to the wheel fenders. Check and clean it in time; otherwise it may cause difficulty in steering or a smaller steering angle.
- › If the front and rear windscreens and side mirrors are blocked by snow, clean it in time. At the same time, you can improve driving visibility using the defrosting function.
- › Avoid emergency braking, sudden acceleration, and sharp turns. Otherwise, the tyres may slip sideways, causing you to lose control over the vehicle and resulting in an accident.

WARNING

When the vehicle is temporarily parked on snowy roads, if the engine is running and there is snow all around the vehicle, please turn off the engine or drive the vehicle to a ventilated place. Otherwise, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle, causing serious personal injury or even death from carbon monoxide poisoning.

Advice on driving during run-in period

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tyres

Take extra care in the first 500 km when driving with a set of new tyres.

New tyres do not offer optimal grip until they have been broken-in.

Friction lining of brake pad

New friction lining of brake hardly achieves optimal braking effect within first 400 km vehicle running.

New friction lining of brake must also be run-in to achieve the best friction performance. If you feel that the braking force of the vehicle is insufficient, you can step on the brake pedal to increase the braking force.

During the run-in period, avoid applying extra load on the brake. For example, emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.

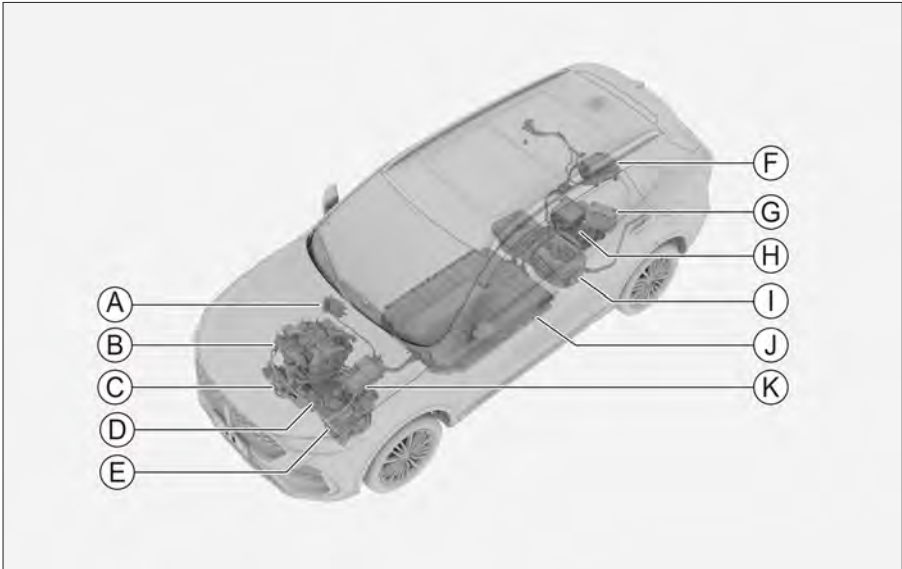
CAUTION

- › The friction linings and brake disk may wear to different degrees depending on the using condition and the driving method.
- › Due to the vehicle speed, braking force and environmental conditions (such as temperature and humidity), there may be noise when braking, which is normal.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all of standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

About hybrid vehicle



5655AE7D7501

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ⓐ A/C heater | Ⓔ Battery |
| Ⓑ Engine | Ⓕ Rear drive motor |
| Ⓒ A/C compressor | Ⓖ Fuel tank |
| Ⓓ Front drive motor | Ⓗ Traction battery pack |
| Ⓔ Automatic transmission | Ⓚ Motor controller |
| Ⓕ Vehicle charger | |

This vehicle is a hybrid vehicle, which is different from ordinary fuel vehicles in characteristics. Please be familiar with the characteristics of the hybrid vehicle and drive it carefully.

Hybrid vehicle

WARNING

- › It's forbidden to touch, remove or replace the parts with high-voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on the vehicle to prevent high-voltage electric shock.
- › After the vehicle is started, the power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning label.

CAUTION

- › -10 to 40°C is the optimal temperature range for the traction battery. It is not recommended to expose the vehicle to high temperature or extremely low temperature for more than 24 hours, otherwise the performance of the traction battery may be reduced.
- › If the temperature of the traction battery is too high or too low, the energy recovery and output power will decrease. In extreme cases, the high-voltage circuit may be cut off, causing the traction battery to stop working.
- › There are batteries and high-voltage control circuits inside the traction battery pack. Liquid entering the traction battery pack may cause short circuit, electric leakage, and corrosion of the collection line and battery connection circuit. Therefore, make sure that the traction battery pack is not soaked by liquids.
- › Due to differences in driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as long slopes), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electrical equipment (such as air conditioners) are turned on or not, the range may fluctuate.
- › The traction battery is affected by the chemical characteristics, and the battery capacity has a natural attenuation. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a while, the range of the battery will be reduced.

The driving method of hybrid vehicles is exactly the same as that of ordinary fuel vehicles. The hybrid system uses a combination of the engine and the drive motor depending on the vehicle operating conditions and driving mode, thereby improving the fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.

- › The drive motor usually drives the vehicle at a low speed.
- › The engine generally drives the vehicle at a high speed or during more active driving.

Engine starting

This vehicle has the following two engine starting options:

› Starting via a front drive motor

The front drive motor is the preferred device for starting the vehicle engine, and can be used when the vehicle is stationary or in motion. Starting the engine by means of the front drive motor features fast starting, low noise and low vibration, making the driver feel more comfortable in starting the engine.

› Starting via a conventional starter

The starter is used when the vehicle is stationary and the temperature is low or when the high voltage system cannot start the engine, but the starter will not be used to start the engine when the vehicle is in motion.

Stopping/starting off

When the vehicle stops, the engine stops working under normal circumstances.

When the vehicle starts off, the vehicle is driven by the drive motor under normal circumstance.

Driving at low speed or down a gentle slope, the engine stops working and the vehicle is driven by the drive motor under normal circumstance.

During normal driving

The vehicle control system automatically selects sole driving by the engine or sole driving by the drive motor or combined driving by both, depending on the driving mode selected by the driver and the driving intentions. In general, sole driving by the drive motor is preferred when there is sufficient power.

Acceleration

When the accelerator pedal is depressed hard, the vehicle is driven by the drive motor and the engine together.

Braking (energy recovery)

When driving at a certain speed in D gear, releasing the accelerator pedal or depressing down the brake pedal converts kinetic energy into electricity, gaining decelerating force while the motor charges the traction battery.

Hybrid vehicle

i NOTICE

Please ensure that you take timely braking action. Depress the brake pedal gently as more electricity can be generated during slow deceleration.

Energy recovery

The function is mainly used to convert a part of kinetic energy of the vehicle during braking or coasting into electric energy of the power battery, thereby extending the distance to empty.

The energy recovery level can be set through the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【Driving】** → **【Energy Recovery Level】** on the multimedia display screen.

⚠ WARNING

The reduction of vehicle speed caused by energy recovery cannot replace normal braking. The brake pedal shall be depressed during deceleration and parking.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle decelerates obviously as the energy recovery function is activated, the brake lamp may be turned on.

i NOTICE

The energy recovery will not be carried out when the vehicle is under the following conditions:

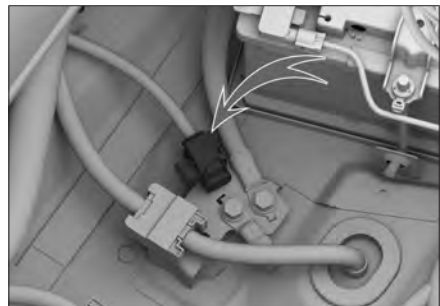
- › The vehicle is in gear N.
- › The power battery is fully charged.
- › The temperature of the power battery is too high or too low.

Battery safety switch

⚠ WARNING

- › When the powertrain fault warning light on the combination instrument is on and red, ask the occupants to move away from the vehicle and contact a authorised service centre immediately.
- › In the event of smoke, sparks, fluid leaks, popping sounds, pungent odours, etc., ask the occupants to move away from the vehicle and call the fire department for help immediately.
- › The battery safety switch should only be operated by specialized persons when they service the vehicle and carry out high voltage related work. Before operation, you shall make sure the vehicle is powered off and wear appropriate safety protection equipment. Otherwise, serious injury or death may be caused.

Battery safety switch in the luggage area



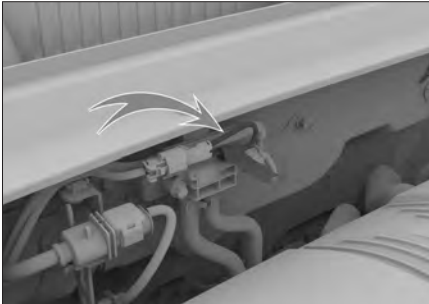
A9C295C56234

Hybrid vehicle

The battery safety switch is located near the battery and can be seen by opening the luggage area cover plate and then removing the toolkit support plate and the sound insulation pad. Switch the power supply to OFF mode before operation.

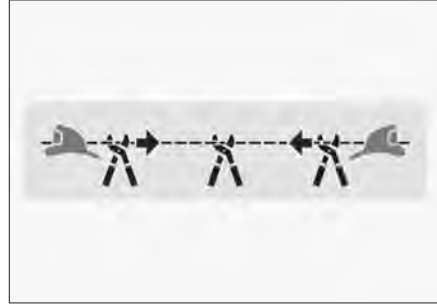
Emergency cut-off point

The emergency cut-off point is located in the engine compartment and can be seen when the hood is opened. In an emergency, to ensure the safety of personnel and the smooth implementation of emergency rescue, the wire harness can be cut.



C01567E9A332

All harnesses of the emergency cut-off point are wrapped with adhesive tape and marked with emergency cut-off signs.



DD512F2B9979

In case of emergency cut-off, it is necessary to cut the low-voltage wire harness 2 to 3 times at intervals within the effective range. Cutting the wire harness only once will easily lead to secondary reconnection of the wire harness, resulting in serious personal injury.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Power supply mode

When carrying the intelligent key, directly press the power supply switch to switch between the power supply modes.



12F82EF5D1C7

No.	Mode	Effects
1	OFF	Electrical components are in the non-working state.
2	ON	All electrical components can be used.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not place the intelligent key on the instrument panel, on the ground, on the combination instrument, in the storage box, or in the luggage area. Please do not put intelligent key on instrument panel, miscellaneous table, floor, storage case, etc., otherwise, power supply mode may be hardly switched.
- › When you leave vehicle, switch the power supply to OFF mode and carry the key with you.

⚠ WARNING

Do not switch the power supply to OFF mode while driving.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Starting the vehicle

Normal startup

1. Carry the intelligent key with you.
2. Adjust the seat position and take correct driving gesture.
3. Confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
4. Make sure the P gear is engaged.
5. Step on the brake pedal.
6. Press the power supply switch to start the vehicle (at this point, the READY indicator light on the combination instrument goes on, indicating that the drive system is ready).


i NOTICE

After the vehicle is started, the engine will be started or stopped automatically according to the vehicle state.

Emergency startup



260B0E182788

If the vehicle asks "Is the key in the vehicle?" (e.g. if the intelligent key is under-voltage or there is severe damage to the door guard or the rear bumper), place the key above the  symbol under the auxiliary instrument panel for performing the start operation to start the vehicle. If the vehicle cannot be started, contact the authorised service centre immediately.

! WARNING

- › Be sure to sit on the driver seat before starting the vehicle. Failure to do so may lead to accident, serious injury or even death.
- › Do not step on the accelerator pedal under any circumstances when starting the vehicle.
- › Always start the vehicle even if you need to move the vehicle slightly. Failure to do so may result in an accident.

Shutting down the vehicle

Normal shutdown

1. Stop the vehicle steadily and shift to the P gear position.
2. Press the power supply switch to shut down the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not touch high-temperature components such as the engine, exhaust pipe, and radiator immediately after shutting down the engine. Otherwise, you may be burned.

NOTICE

After the engine has operated at a high speed or with a high load for a long time, it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for a short time or drive at a low speed for some distance.

Emergency shutdown

In case of emergencies such as inability to stop the vehicle by normal means during driving (at the speed of greater than 5 km/h), you can shut down the vehicle in emergency by performing any of the following operations:

- › Press and hold the power supply switch.
- › Press the power supply switch for 3 consecutive times within 2 seconds.

WARNING

- › Switching the power supply mode while driving may result in a collision or serious personal injury.
- › Unless it is an emergency, do not forcefully switch the vehicle power supply mode while driving.

Otherwise, power assist for the brake and the steering wheel will be lost. As a result, it is harder to press the brake pedal and turn the steering wheel. Therefore, the vehicle should slow down as much as possible before operating.

- › After the vehicle power supply is turned off, when the vehicle speed is higher than 2 km/h, the vehicle will automatically shift to the N gear position. When the vehicle speed is less than 2 km/h, the vehicle will automatically shift to the P gear position.

Parking brake

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tips for safety

⚠ WARNING

- › Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- › If the slope is too steep, use of the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Electronic parking brake

Applying the parking brake



B30E2B610730

- › When the vehicle is stationary and the power supply is switched to OFF mode, the electronic parking brake (EPB) will be applied automatically. At this point, the indicator light (Ⓢ) and the EPB switch indicator light on the combination instrument go on. If the parking brake is not required, press and hold the EPB switch while switching the power supply to OFF mode.
- › After the vehicle is stationary, pull up the EPB switch to apply the parking brake. At this point, the indicator light (Ⓢ) and the EPB switch indicator light on the combination instrument go on.

Emergency braking

In case of emergency, pull up the EPB switch and hold it, then use the EPB system to brake the vehicle.

Emergency braking can be cancelled as long as the EPB switch is released or the accelerator pedal is depressed.

⚠ WARNING

The emergency braking function of the EPB system can only be used in the event of an emergency braking (e.g. when the brake pedal is blocked).

Releasing the parking brake



When the power supply is in ON mode, step on the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the parking brake. At this point, the indicator light (Ⓢ) and the EPB switch indicator light on the combination instrument go off.

i NOTICE

If the vehicle is powered off abnormally, the parking brake fault warning light (Ⓢ) on the combination instrument turns on after the vehicle is powered on again. In this case, the system needs to self-learn. Pull up the EPB switch first, then depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the EPB normally.

AVH function




Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH) eliminates the need for the driver to step on the brake pedal for extended periods or apply the electronic parking brake frequently when the vehicle is on a slope, meets red lights or stops and goes. It allows the driver to drive more comfortably and reduces the risk of vehicle sliding.

After the drive side door is closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, and the vehicle is started, press the AVH switch to turn on or off the automatic parking function.

Instructions for use

1. Turn on the AVH function. At this point, the AVH function is in the ready state, and the (Ⓢ) indicator light and AVH switch indicator light on the combination instrument turn yellow.

Parking brake

2. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically apply the parking braking. At this point, the AVH function is working, and the indicator light  and AVH switch indicator light on the combination instrument are green.
3. When the shift lever is placed in gear D or R, depress the accelerator pedal and the parking brake is automatically released.

If the accelerator pedal is not depressed for a long time, the AVH function will be deactivated, and the vehicle will automatically switch to electric parking mode, thus applying the braking force.

The following conditions will deactivate the AVH function forcedly:

- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver side door is open.
- › Switch the power supply mode to OFF mode.
- › The AVH function has been working for more than 3 minutes.

CAUTION

In the case of automatic car washing and towing, the parking brake needs to be released.

Automatic departure function

With the parking brake applied to the vehicle, the parking brake is automatically released when the driver fastens the seat belt, depresses the accelerator pedal and the system detects the driver's intention to depart.

On a slope, more traction is required to avoid sliding.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Introduction to gear positions

Park gear (P)

The P gear is used to assist in parking the vehicle. When the P gear is engaged, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from sliding.

Reverse (R) gear

The R gear is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear

The N gear is an unpowered gear, and the vehicle is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear is engaged.

WARNING

- › When stopping the vehicle temporarily in gear N, be sure to apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may coast and cause an accident.

- › Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Automatic mode (D)

The D gear is recommended for normal driving.

When the vehicle is driven by the engine, the transmission can be automatically adjusted to the appropriate gear according to the vehicle speed and the required acceleration, in order to achieve optimum power and economy.

Manual mode (M)

The M gear is recommended for speeding up and overtaking or driving uphill and downhill.

Lower gear positions of M gear are recommended for bumpy road, ramp and the like.

NOTICE

- › Using manual mode will automatically activate the engine to drive the vehicle.
- › When the vehicle is driven in **【EV】** mode, and the gear M is engaged, the driving mode will automatically switch to **【SPORT】** mode. The driving mode will not change when M gear is engaged in other driving modes.

Automatic transmission

Gear shifting method

You can shift gears as normal after starting the vehicle. Before vehicle starting, always step on the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle will move on its own when it is in a driving gear position.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent vehicle damage or an accident, only shift to the P or R positions after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

i NOTICE

- › Opening the driver door or unfastening the driver seat belt when the vehicle speed is lower than 2 km/h will cause the vehicle to shift to P gear automatically.
- › Once the vehicle has been turned off, it will automatically shift to P gear.

i NOTICE

- › After disconnecting the battery or performing a FOTA upgrade on the vehicle, please wait for 5 seconds to perform the operations such as shifting gears and depressing the accelerator pedal after the vehicle is powered on at high voltage, so as not to interrupt the self-learning process of the shift controller.
- › After switching gears, confirm that the vehicle is in the correct gear position.

Shifting to D, R, N and M gears



8C4E5FD41E51

Ⓐ Gear lever

Ⓑ Park position switch

- › To exit P gear or shift to R or D gear, step on the brake pedal and move the gear lever.
- › After engaging D gear, shift to M gear by moving the gear lever backwards. Move the lever again to shift to D gear.
- › To shift from D or M gear to N gear, simply move the gear lever forwards one position.
- › To shift from R gear to N gear, simply move the gear lever backwards one position.

i NOTICE

The chosen gear will be shown on the gear panel and in the information centre of the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

If information about a transmission-related fault appears on the instrument cluster, the transmission may go into emergency operating mode. When this happens, you will only be able to shift to a specific gear or cannot shift gears, and the engine may stall. Stop as quickly as you can in a safe place and contact an authorised service centre.

Shifting to P gear

Press the Park position switch when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Shifting gears when in manual mode (M gear)

i NOTICE

In manual mode, if the engine speed is too high or low, the transmission will adjust itself to an appropriate gear automatically to protect the engine.



122E206E5EAA

- Ⓐ Downshift paddle
- Ⓑ Upshift paddle

The paddle shifter allows you to shift up or down without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

When driving in manual mode (M gear), you can shift up or down manually by moving the paddle shifter on the steering wheel.

When driving in automatic mode (D gear), you can activate manual mode temporarily by moving the paddle shifter on the steering wheel. You can then shift up or down manually by moving the paddle shifter again. If you do not use the paddle shifter again within a certain period of time, the vehicle will return to automatic mode.

Crawl function

Once the vehicle has started, shift to the D gear, release the parking brake and the brake pedal. There is no need to depress the accelerator pedal at this point and the vehicle can be driven slowly.

Start

Normal start

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal and shift to D gear (M gear is recommended for hill start which needs higher torque output).

Automatic transmission

4. Release the brake pedal and then gently step on the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to accelerate.

NOTICE

When the vehicle starts, the automatic DAA function will automatically release the parking brake.

Launch control

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Switch the driving mode to **【SPORT】** mode and make sure that the ESC is turned off.
4. Depress the brake pedal with your left foot, shift to D or M gear and release the parking brake. Also, depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot and the instrument prompts "launch control activated".
5. After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle begins launch control until the vehicle start is completed.

CAUTION

- › Releasing the accelerator pedal when the launch control is active will lead to exit from the launch control mode.

- › If the time to keep braking is too long (approx. 5 seconds) without starting when the launch control is activated, the vehicle will enter the timeout status. Also, the instrument will prompt "timeout protection" to protect the clutch and braking system. After entering the timeout status, you need to release the brake and accelerator pedals and then deeply depress the brake pedal to exit from the timeout status, for the next launch control.

WARNING

- › Launch control will affect the service life of the transmission, so use it with caution.
- › Be sure to drive carefully within the limits permitted by law.
- › The launch control can only be activated in a place where there is no cross-traffic or pedestrians. It is the driver's obligation to ensure that the driving mode and acceleration will not threaten or impede safety of other road users.
- › The function cannot be used when the vehicle runs on slippery roads. Otherwise, the vehicle will get out of control and cause an accident.

Stopping the vehicle

1. After releasing the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.

2. After the vehicle is stopped steadily, engage the P gear position.
3. Apply the parking brake or shut down the vehicle engine directly as required.

NOTICE

After the vehicle engine is shut down, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

4. Release the brake pedal.

CAUTION

- › When it is necessary to stop the vehicle temporarily at the slope, the brake pedal must be stepped on or the parking brake must be applied. It's forbidden to use accelerate pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle stable. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- › It's forbidden to park on the slope only by engaging the P gear position. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.
- › When stopping the vehicle on a slope, please wedge the wheels if necessary to prevent rolling.

Driving mode

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Switching method

CAUTION

- › If you use the driving modes incorrectly, the vehicle will respond erroneously to road conditions so that the life of the suspension and transmission systems will be reduced.
- › Before the vehicle enters a complex terrain, the driver should make a prior determination of the terrain and activate the appropriate driving mode to prevent the vehicle from losing control.

You can switch between driving modes by going to **【Vehicle Setting】** → **【Driving】** → **【Driving Mode】** on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【NORMAL】** : The power system will automatically choose the best driving mode according to the current driving condition, comprehensive dynamic performance and economy of the vehicle.
- › **【EV】** : The vehicle is driven by an electric motor. This mode is suitable for urban roads, which helps to save energy and reduce emissions.
- › **【CHARGE】** : This mode allows you to set the SOC value in the current mode, to make the power battery level remain at the set limit. It is suitable for use before entering urban conditions or congested roads to ensure sufficient EV range and improved fuel economy for driving in urban conditions or on congested roads.
- › **【SPORT】** : It improves the vehicle dynamics and brings a higher level of driving experience. Suitable for use on wide, flat roads with few vehicles.
- › **【SNOW】** : It is suitable for hard but slippery roads including snow, ice, grass, gravel roads, etc.
- › **【AWD】** : It can distribute the drive force evenly to front and rear axles and automatically adjusts the driving mode to adapt to the current driving conditions. It is used for non-paved road with poor adhesion.
- › **【MUD】** : It is suitable for muddy and uneven roads with a smooth layer of mud or ruts on the surface.

- › **【SAND】** : It is suitable for desert edge areas with Gobi and hard sand layer.

i NOTICE

After the vehicle is powered off, if the battery is disconnected and the vehicle is powered on again, the vehicle will be in the NORMAL driving mode by default when the vehicle is started again.

Driving with a trailer

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Trailer instruction

As regulations governing trailer traveling and trailer device vary from country to country, please consult local authorised service centre before traveling with trailer.

CAUTION

Improper use of a trailer may result in loss of control of the vehicle, which may easily lead to accidents and personal injury.

- › When the trailer is running, please observe all relevant local laws and regulations. Unauthorised modification is strictly forbidden.
- › The trailer device may only be used if it is undamaged and properly installed.
- › Do not modify or repair the trailer device in any form.

- › When driving without a trailer, be sure to disconnect the trailer power harness, turn off the trailer mode, and retract the trailer coupler.
- › The outside rearview mirrors of the vehicle must satisfy the national regulations. If not, please install suitable trailer rearview mirrors.

NOTICE

- › Do not tow a trailer by a new vehicle during run-in period.
- › Damage to the vehicle's electronic systems may occur if the power consumption of the trailer exceeds the battery load.

Driving instructions

WARNING

It is illegally and strictly forbidden to transport persons in the trailer, as it may cause serious injury or even death.

Always drive cautiously and in an anticipatory manner. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking.

Driving with a trailer will affect the vehicle's performance, including handling, braking, and fuel consumption and can shorten its service interval. For the safety of you and your passengers, and to ensure safe trailer towing, please follow the driving recommendations below.

Before driving

Understand the laws, regulations and requirements related to vehicle speeds in the country where you drive the vehicle with a trailer. Under no circumstances should the vehicle speed be higher than 100 km/h.

Before driving with a trailer, please confirm that the vehicle's and trailer's tyre pressure, lights and connection devices work well.

i NOTICE

- › The vehicle's rear tyre pressure should be about 20 kPa higher than that of the vehicle in normal driving.
- › Use your tyre manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for your trailer.

Adjust the vehicle's side mirrors to ensure a sufficient field of view.

Spread your cargo over the loading surface of the trailer as evenly as possible. Load items as close to the axle of the trailer as possible. Lowering the trailer's centre of gravity will significantly enhance the overall safety of the vehicle and trailer during driving.

i NOTICE

- › Be sure the trailer's rear lights can work well and are in compliance with laws and regulations, with the power lower than the maximum power of the trailer's rear lights.
- › To protect the vehicle battery, keep the power use time of the electrical devices connected to the trailer as short as possible.

Starting off the vehicle

Start off the vehicle gradually, and avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking, especially on wet and slippery roads, to prevent the vehicle from being out of control because of its skidding.

Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to sway, making it extremely hard for you to control the vehicle. If you notice that the vehicle is swaying even slightly, under any circumstances, grip the steering wheel firmly with both hands and immediately start slowly reducing the speed of the vehicle, without any attempt to stop the swaying of the vehicle by speeding up.

Try best to avoid driving an empty vehicle but towing a trailer with goods fully loaded. If you have to do that, you should drive slowly due to the unbalanced load situation in the vehicle and the trailer.

Driving with a trailer

Braking

Driving with a trailer will increase the vehicle's braking distance. Thus, you should leave more space between your vehicle and the one ahead.

WARNING

- › If your trailer is equipped with a brake system, please observe the relevant local regulations, and install and operate the system correctly.
- › Never connect the brake system for the trailer to that of the vehicle.

Overtaking

Driving with a trailer will extend the vehicle's length as a whole. So when overtaking other vehicles, you need to allow more distance before returning to your original lane.

Reversing

Reversing the vehicle with a trailer, different from and more difficult than normal reversing, requires your extra care and practices.

While reversing, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left to make the trailer turn left. Similarly, turning the wheel to the right will make the trailer turn right. You must reverse slowly, and you can turn to others for help if possible.

Turning

When driving with a trailer, you should turn the vehicle steadily, try to avoid bumps and sudden movements, and start your turn indicator light earlier. When turning, you should extend the turning radius, making a turn wider than that of vehicle without a trailer. In this way, you can prevent the trailer from pumping into the curb, road signs, trees, or other objects.

Driving on slopes

When driving with a trailer on relatively steep or long hills, you should slowdown and start down-shifting earlier.

Before driving upwards on the slopes, you are suggested to keep the traction battery power charge higher than 30% to help prevent issues with limited air conditioning and reduced power due to low battery charge.

Choose your driving speed based on the weight of your trailer and the steepness of the slope to decrease the possibility of vehicle overheating.

Try to avoid parking your vehicle on a slope. If you have to do so, place chocks under the trailer's and vehicle's wheels with the parking brake on.

WARNING

- › When driving with a trailer on a steep slope, pay close attention to the coolant temperature to make sure the vehicle is not overheated.

- › For safety purposes, if the vehicle coolant temperature is overly high, stop the vehicle immediately and let the vehicle idle in neutral until it cools.

Trailer hitch



The trailer hitch mounting points are located at the ends of the left and right rails of the vehicle.

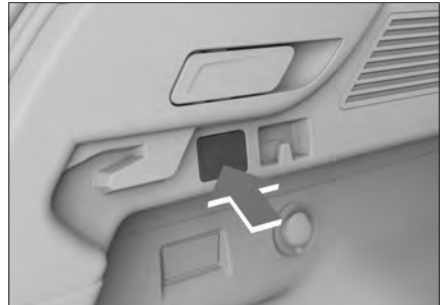
⚠ WARNING

- › Incorrect installation of the trailer hitch may cause the trailer to detach from the vehicle, resulting in serious accidents or personal injury. We recommend that you have it installed at your authorised service centre.
- › Never modify or repair the trailer hitch without permission.

Semi-automatic tow hook

To use or take back the semi-automatic tow hook, it needs to be unlocked first. The detailed method is as follows:

- › Press the unlock button in the luggage area.



- › Tap the **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【Body】** → **【Trailer Hook】** → **【Trailer Mode】** on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

When unlocking the semi-automatic tow hook, make sure that no one is in the overturning area of the semi-automatic tow hook.

- › After unlocking the semi-automatic tow hook, pull the tow hook towards the rear of the vehicle to lock the tow hook in its use position.
- › After unlocking the semi-automatic tow hook, push the tow hook towards the front of the vehicle to lock the tow hook in its retracted position.

⚠ WARNING

- › When the semi-automatic tow hook is not in use, retract it.

Driving with a trailer

- › When using or retracting the semi-automatic tow hook, make sure that it is locked in place.

Trailer power port

Power port location

The trailer power port (connector) is located near the trailer hitch and can be used after opening its cover.

The power port complies with ISO 11446.

i NOTICE

- › After the trailer power port is connected, the engine will remain running, the vehicle cannot be switched to EV mode.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, some functions of the parking assist system will not work properly.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, some functions of the intelligent driving assist system will not work properly.

Power port pins

The pin numbers are printed on the inner side of the power port cover and their corresponding pin meanings are as follows:

Pin No.	Function
1	Left turn signal lamp

Pin No.	Function
2	Rear fog lamp
3	Grounding (lamp circuit)
4	Right turn signal lamp
5	Right position lamp
6	Brake lamp
7	Left position lamp
8	Reverse lamp
9	12V power supply
10	Power supply switch
11	Grounding (power switch circuit)
12	—
13	Grounding (12V power supply circuit)

Technical parameters

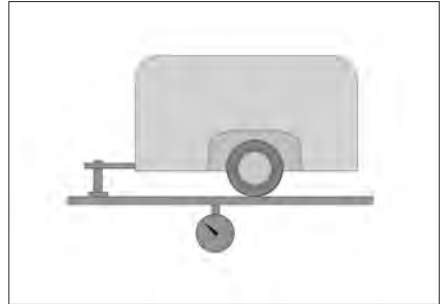
To ensure the driving safety, do not overspeed or drive while the vehicle is overloaded. For specific parameters, refer to the table below:

Item		Data
Maximum total mass [kg]	2WD	4550
	4WD	4675
Trailer mass [kg]	With brakes	2000
	Without brakes	750
Maximum permissible front/rear axle load [kg]		1300/1550

Item	Data
Static vertical load on the connecting point [kg]	100
Maximum rear overhang of the trailer hitch [mm]	1045

The maximum permissible front/rear axle load is the maximum load capacity permitted for the front/rear axle of the vehicle.

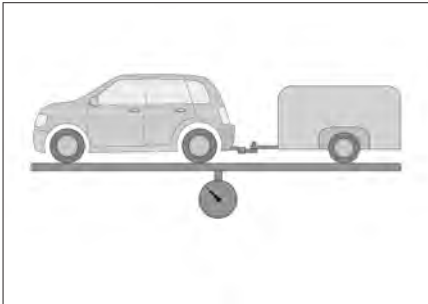
Trailer mass



BFFCB1D4CF27

The trailer mass is the permissible total mass of the trailer, including the mass of both trailer and its contents.

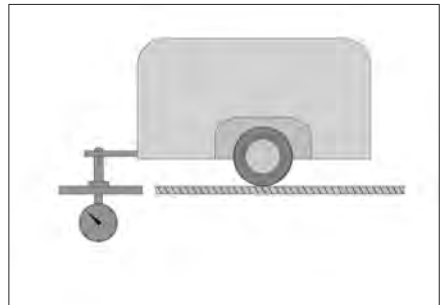
Maximum total mass



096EEEA0BA9

The maximum total mass is the maximum permissible mass for the combination of the vehicle (including passengers and contents), the trailer hitch, and the trailer (including its contents).

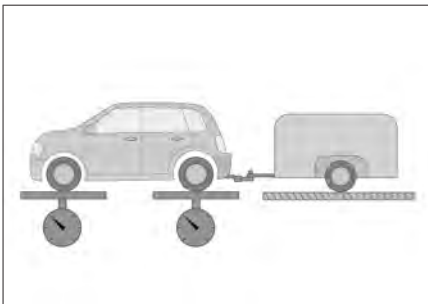
Static vertical load on the connecting point



8592AA18FB55

The static vertical load on the connecting point is the maximum vertical load that the connection between the trailer and the trailer hitch can bear under static conditions.

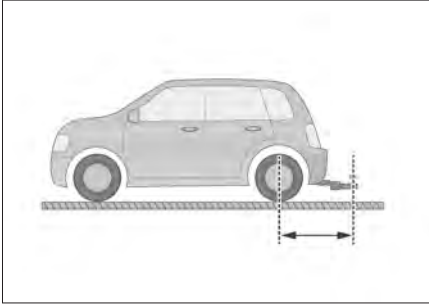
Maximum permissible front/rear axle load



76934098A400

Driving with a trailer

Maximum rear overhang of the trailer hitch



51EC772859F7

The maximum rear overhang of the trailer hitch is the permissible horizontal distance between the centre of the trailer hitch connecting point and the centre-line of the rear axle of the vehicle.

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Electric power assisted steering mode

You can switch between electric power assisted steering modes, including **【Light】**, **【Comfort】** and **【Sport】** through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Driving】** → **【Electric power assisted steering】** interface on the multimedia display.

- › **【Light】** : it increases steering assist for easy steering. It is applicable to traffic congestion driving environment such as urban areas.
- › **【Comfort】** : it is suitable for general driving habits.
- › **【Sport】** : it reduces steering assist and increases steering wheel feedback. It is recommended to use it under high speed, rain and snow and other cases.

i NOTICE

When switching between electric power assisted steering modes, the following conditions need to be met:

- › The electric power assisted steering system is functioning normally.
- › The speed of the vehicle is less than 125 km/h.
- › No apparent turn operation has been carried out.

Sound prompt system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not rely too much on the audio reminder system. In some cases, pedestrians may not hear the prompt tone of the sound prompt system and fail to notice an approaching vehicle, which can easily lead to traffic accidents, resulting in personal injury or even death.

System introduction

When the vehicle is running at a low speed, the voice prompt system will issue audible prompt tone to pedestrians and vehicles to improve driving safety.

Instructions

You can set the prompt tone through the **【System settings】** → **【Sound】** → **【Sound effects】** → **【Pedestrian warning sound】** on the multimedia display screen, including **【Technology】** and **【Classic】**.

The system will give a prompt tone when the vehicle enters the fully electric driving mode and the following conditions are met:

- › The vehicle is moving forward and the speed is less than or equal to 30 km/h.
- › The vehicle is reversing.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Safety prompt

WARNING

- › The parking assist system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during parking or similar operations.
- › There are blind spots to the coverage of the parking assist system, and obstacles in certain areas may not be detected. Therefore, during parking or similar operations, please make sure that there are no children or animals near the vehicle.

CAUTION

- › When reversing, confirm that the tailgate is fully closed.

- › Never knock the camera and the sensor.
- › Do not flush the camera and the sensor with a high-pressure water gun in the front. Otherwise, water may result in system failure or fire.
- › Do not use rough or sharp material to clean the camera and the sensor. Please wipe with a soft cloth or wash with water (low water pressure) to clean the surface of the camera and the sensor.

NOTICE

The radar detection device of the parking assist system is affected by ultrasonic characteristics. Incapability or poor detection may be caused under the following circumstances, which are not system failures:

- › The obstacle is a wire net, fence, post, rope, or other such thin objects.
- › The obstacle is an object whose surface does not reflect the detection signal or a person wearing such clothing.
- › The obstacle is snow, cotton or other substances of which the surface can easily absorb sound waves.
- › The obstacle is below the radar sensor.

Parking assist system

- › The obstacle is an acute-angle reflector or cone shaped object, such as a right-angle square column, a fire hydrant box, etc.
 - › The obstacle is a suspended object such as a fire box.
 - › Drive through grass or over rough terrain.
 - › Reverse on a ramp.
 - › There are ultrasonic noises with the same frequency around, such as metal noise, high-pressure gas emission noise, or a car horn directed at the sensor.
 - › The license plate is bent or tilting, or a large license plate decorative frame is installed.
 - › A foreign object is stuck to the surface of the sensor, such as an invisible vehicle cover.
- To ensure the normal operation of the system, keep the sensor clean and free of snow and ice.

Collision avoidance radar

System description

An collision avoidance radar is a radar detection device. During parking, sensors are used to detect whether there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle, detect the distance of obstacles, and give sound prompt to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Instructions

The collision avoidance radar and the AVM are activated and deactivated at the same time.

Detection scope and alarm mode

Sensor position	Detection scope [m]
Front on both sides	0.6
Front centre	1.0
Rear on both sides	1.2
Rear centre	1.5

After the collision avoidance radar is activated, if the sensor detects obstacles within the detection range, it will start to give a warning.

With the shortening of the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, the frequency of the alarm sound will gradually increase. When the vehicle sends an urgent alarm, and the vehicle should not continue running at this time to avoid a collision.

System failure

When the radar sensor malfunctions, the vehicle top view area in the AVM interface will display a corresponding red warning colour block and be accompanied by corresponding text prompts. Please contact the authorised service centre for maintenance in time.

- › If all radars fail in the AVM interface, a red warning colour block will be displayed at the surrounding area of the vehicle top view, and the text prompt of “Radar system fault” will be displayed.



- › When shifting to R gear position and entering the AVM, if the rear radar fails, a red warning colour block will be displayed at the surrounding area of the vehicle top view, and a text prompt of “Rear radar fault” will be displayed.





Around view monitor (AVM)

System description

The AVM uses four cameras to capture images surrounding the vehicle and sends a video signal to the display screen for display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions

You can turn on or off the AVM by the following ways:

- › Touch the 360 button  on the multimedia display screen to turn on the AVM.
- › On the AVM interface, touch the off button  to turn off the AVM.
- › When the R gear position is engaged, the AVM will turn on automatically.
- › When the P gear position is engaged, the AVM will turn off automatically.
- › The AVM will turn off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

You can set the auto off speed of the AVM through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Parking】** → **【Disable surround view】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Parking assist system

AVM interface

i NOTICE

- › The AVM interface may vary depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- › The brightness of the AVM interface changes synchronously with the brightness adjustment of the multi-media display screen.



00A291C2D15C

- › Touch the intelligent parking button **P** to activate the intelligent integrated parking system.
- › Touch the track-back reverse button **↶** to activate the track-back reverse function.
- › Touch the **【2D/3D】** button to switch between view modes.

In 3D view mode, touch the vehicle top view area, and the top view shows the position view button. Touch the different position view button, and the image area displays the viewing angle image corresponding to the button.

In 2D view mode, touch the upper, lower, left and right areas of the vehicle top view to switch to the single view image where the area is located.

- › Touch the transparent chassis button **☒** to turn on or off the underbody transparent function.

After the transparent chassis function is enabled, as the vehicle moves, the AVM interface gradually displays the images of the road conditions below the vehicle.

- › Touch the auxiliary view button **⊗** to enable the tyre view **⊗** or the driving track perspective **↶**.
- › Touch the radar mute button **🔇** to turn off or on the radar alarm tone.

Every time you enter the AVM interface, the radar alarm tone is enabled by default.

- › Touch the intelligent vision button **📷** to turn on or off the intelligent vision switching function. After the function is activated:

When the vehicle is in the D gear position, if the front radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, it will automatically switch to the front top view image.

When the vehicle is in the R gear position, if the rear radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, it will automatically switch to the rear top view image.

It will automatically switch to the previous image after the obstacle is removed.

System failure

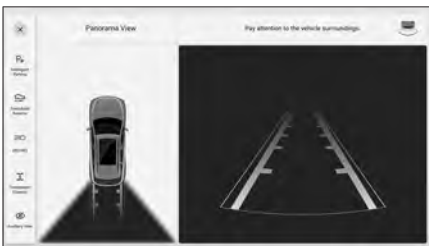
When the camera malfunctions, the AVM interface corresponding to the faulty camera may not display properly and may be accompanied by corresponding text prompts. Please contact the authorised service centre for maintenance in time.

- After entering the AVM interface, if all the four surround view cameras fail, the AVM interface will not display any view image, and a text prompt of “Panoramic system fault” will be displayed.



228874881E64

- When shifting to R gear position and entering the AVM, if the rear surround view camera fails, a black warning colour block will be displayed at the rear area of the vehicle top view.



D2B9B6939557

Intelligent integrated parking system

System introduction

Based on the AVM and the anti-collision radar system, the intelligent integrated parking system uses radar sensors and cameras to detect vehicle surrounding obstacles, parking lines and other information to identify suitable parking slots and automatically control the vehicle to complete steering, shifting and braking operations. The driver only needs to drive the vehicle into and out of the parking slot by following the system prompts.

During the parking process, if moving obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking to quickly complete vehicle braking; if a fixed obstacle is detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will perform comfortable braking to achieve smooth braking of the vehicle.

Parking assist system

WARNING

The intelligent integrated parking system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot replace the driver's judgment on the external situation. During the parking process, the driver should observe the surrounding situation and parking prompt information in real time, and emergency control or necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

How to use

After the vehicle is started, touch the **【Intelligent Parking】** button on the AVM interface to activate the intelligent integrated parking system.

Intelligent parking is completed by following the prompts displayed on the multimedia display screen when the system is activated.

CAUTION

In order to ensure the parking safety, the driver needs to monitor the surrounding environment of the vehicle at any time, to brake and take over the vehicle in time when there is a collision risk.

NOTICE

- › The parking-out function can only be used when the vehicle is stationary.

- › In the process of searching for parking space, please make sure to keep a proper distance (about 0.5~1.5m) from vehicles or obstacles on both sides. Otherwise, the system may not be able to identify the parking space.

Precautions

During intelligent parking process, the following operations may cause temporary interruption of parking, and it can be resumed when the interruption disappears.

- › When the doors (including the back door) are opened.
- › When the outside rearview mirror is folded.
- › When the driver seat belt is released.
- › Obstacles appear on the parking path.
- › when there is interference with the accelerator pedal.

During intelligent parking process, the following operations may cause the intelligent parking to exit.

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h in the process of searching for parking space.
- › When there is interference with the gears, steering wheel or parking brake.
- › Recoverable interruption beyond time limit, number of interruptions beyond limit, number of parking movements beyond limit, and total parking time beyond time limit.

- › When touching the intelligent button.
- › If there is no direction limit or the road is unobstructed when exiting from the parking space, it is not necessary to use the intelligent parking function.
- › The slope of the ground where the vehicle is located is too large.

The system cannot cover all parking scenario applications, and the expected functions may not be achieved in some special situations. The following situations are just examples and do not include all special situations:

- › Parking space line cannot be clearly identified due to the influence of the surrounding environment, for example, the parking line is polluted or covered by massive garbage, weeds, mud, etc., or the surrounding light source has low illumination, and the surface of the parking space has a large reflectivity.
- › The parking space has raised ground and the opposite parking line cannot be detected.
- › There are pits on the ground of the parking space.
- › The front or rear vehicle is too close to the unoccupied parking space, or occupies part of the unoccupied parking space.
- › There are pedestrians or other obstructions in the parking space.

- › Pedestrians and other obstacles stay near the camera when the vehicle is stationary.
- › Previous parking line can be seen in the parking space.
- › Parking space is located in corners or curves.
- › Heavy wear of the vehicle tyres or installation of unapproved tyres (including non-full-size spare tyres).
- › Using this function on uneven ground (such as weeds, gravel roads, etc.) may cause system recognition errors and unnecessary application of braking.
- › External sound sources may cause interference to the system, causing the sensor failure to identify correctly, and may falsely report obstacles that do not exist.
- › The sensor is smudged or covered.
- › Heavy fog, rain or snow.

Cases in which intelligent parking function is forbidden:

- › Tyre chains or spare tyres are installed.
- › The loaded objects exceed the vehicle size.
- › A tow hook is installed.
- › The slope of the ground where the vehicle is located is too large.
- › The road surface has large pits or cavities.

Parking assist system

Track-back reverse

System description

When the vehicle is running in the D gear position at a speed lower than or equal to 30 km/h, the system will record the last 50 m route in real time. When the track-back reverse function is activated, the system will control the steering wheel, the brake and the vehicle speed so that the vehicle can automatically complete reversing in accordance with the recorded route.

In the process of reversing, if pedestrians, vehicles, and other non-fixed obstacles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking to quickly complete vehicle braking.

NOTICE

As a result of mechanical deviation, tyre pressure and other factors that affect the system control accuracy, there will be a certain deviation in the reversing path, so returning along the original path completely cannot be ensured.

WARNING

The track-back reverse function is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During the reversing process, the driver should observe the surrounding situation and reversing prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

Instructions

After the vehicle is started, touch the **【Track-back reverse】** button on the AVM (Around View Monitor) interface, and the track-back reverse function will be enabled.

Automatic reversing is completed by following the prompts displayed on the multimedia display screen when the track-back reverse function is activated.

CAUTION

For parking safety, the driver needs to monitor the surrounding environment of the vehicle at any time, to brake and take over the vehicle in time when there is a collision risk.

Precautions

When the following situations occur, the system will stop and the recorded route will be cleared:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- › The vehicle stalls abnormally.
- › The steering wheel angle is too large (about 450°).
- › The automatic reversing deviates from the recorded route by about 1 m.

During reversing, the following conditions will cause the track-back reverse function to be interrupted or exited:

- › Touch the track-back reverse button.
- › The gear position, steering wheel, parking brake or accelerator pedal is subject to human interference or operation.
- › The driver's seat belt is released.
- › The vehicle doors (including the tail-gate) are opened.
- › Fold the side mirrors.
- › The system detects that the vehicle cannot continue driving.
- › Obstacles are detected on the driving track.

i NOTICE

After an interruption and exiting due to non-system breakdown, turn on the track-back reverse function again, and the system can control the vehicle to complete the reverse along the remaining path.


Parking settings

You can set the related functions of the parking assist system through the 【Vehicle settings】 → 【Parking】 interface on the multimedia display screen. Refer to the actual vehicle for specific setting items.

- › 【Front sensor auto on】 : you can turn on or off the front radar auto on function.

After the function is enabled, if the moving speed is less than 10 km/h and there is an obstacle detected within the detection range, the front radar and AVM system will turn on automatically. The system will automatically turn off if within a few seconds the distance of the obstacle does not change, or the obstacle is far away, or the parking brake is applied.

- › 【MEB】 : you can turn on or off the MEB function.

After the function is activated, when the vehicle is running at a low speed, the MEB indicator light  on the AVM interface will illuminate in green, which indicates that the function is normally activated. If an obstacle is detected during low speed driving and a collision risk is determined, the system will automatically apply emergency braking to reduce the risk of a collision. At this moment, the indicator light turns red.

Parking assist system

CAUTION

- › The function is only an auxiliary one, which cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- › Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please deactivate the MEB function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › Turn off the MEB function after the vehicle is equipped with a traction hitch or when the vehicle is towing other vehicles. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

- › **【Side safety distance warning】** : you can turn on or off the side safety distance warning function.

After the function is activated and when the sensors on the left and right sides of the vehicle body identify obstacles, the system prompts the driver to park carefully through pictures and audible alarms.

- › **【Automatic blind spot camera】** : you can turn on or off the steering auto function.

After the function is activated, when the D gear position is engaged and the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, turn on the turn signal light or turn the steering wheel to a certain angle, and then the AVM will automatically turn on. After the steering wheel is restored, the AVM will automatically turn off when the turn signal is off or the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.

- › **【Disable surround view】** : you can disable surround view.

The AVM will turn off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

- › **【Enable surround view】** : you can switch to the AVM interface.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Introduction to intelligent driving

The intelligent driving assistance system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using a camera and radar sensor, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve safety and comfort while the vehicle is travelling.

WARNING

- › The intelligent driving assistance system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own assessment of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. In any case, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.

- › When the vehicle has towing equipment installed or is towing another vehicle, Intelligent driving assist system can not work properly, so the function related to the intelligent driving should be turned off.

Camera

The camera, located on the upper part of the front windscreen, is mainly used to identify lane markings, traffic signs, targets around vehicle, etc., providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › It is strictly prohibited to disassemble or modify the camera without permission.
- › When the camera does not work properly, the function of relying on the camera to provide target and lane marking information will be limited.
- › The camera has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the limit range.
- › When the camera fails or is damaged, please contact a authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

Intelligent driving assist information system

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the camera, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the following:

- › Poor lighting conditions at night;
- › Weather conditions (such as rain, snow and fog) with poor visibility;
- › A situation in which a vehicle wobbles due to an undulating or uneven road;
- › A situation where the ambient light changes sharply;
- › A situation that a strong light shines the camera;
- › Deformed or damaged windscreen, causing the incorrect camera installation position and angle;
- › Complex intersections;
- › Too high or too low ambient temperature;
- › A situation that the camera is covered with a foreign object;
- › Short following distance and blocked camera;
- › A situation where a guardrail, an elevated road or a tree casts a shadow on the road;
- › Poor light in the tunnel;
- › A situation of passing through narrow bends and sharp turns;

- › Unclear lane markings.

NOTICE

When the instrument indicates that the system sensor detection is restricted, check and ensure the camera and its surroundings are clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.

Millimetre wave radar

Millimetre wave radar sensors, located inside the front and rear bumpers, are used to detect the targets around the vehicle, providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › It is not allowed to paint and modify the bumper without permission to avoid the limited detection performance of the millimetre wave radar.
- › When the millimetre wave radar cannot work normally, the function relying on the millimetre wave radar to provide detection information will be limited.
- › The millimetre wave radar has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the range.
- › When the millimetre wave radar fails or is damaged, please contact a authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

! WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the millimetre wave radar, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Severe weather (e.g. fog, haze, rain, snow and dust storm);
- › Foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, or bumper;
- › Misaligned or blocked millimetre wave radar;
- › The impact to the area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper due to the collision of vehicles, scratches and other accidents;
- › Too small volume of the detected object;
- › Interference by electromagnetic wave of the same frequency;
- › The millimetre wave radar temperature out of the working range due to the vehicle in a high temperature or extremely cold environment.

i NOTICE

The area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper must be kept clean and free from foreign objects such as ice, snow and dust to ensure the normal operation of the millimetre wave radar.

When you find a foreign object attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water.

- › Do not use the high-pressure water gun to flush the millimetre wave radar.
- › Do not use sharp or abrasive objects for cleaning.
- › Do not use chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners.

Front assist

The front assist system uses a camera on the windscreen and radar sensors in the front bumper to detect vehicles on the road. Upon detecting a collision risk ahead, the system will either sound an alarm or take corrective measures to mitigate the risk of collision.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Front assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Intelligent driving assist information system

WARNING

- › We cannot guarantee that this system will function as expected in all situations. Driving the vehicle towards pedestrians, animals or other vehicles for the purpose of testing the system is strictly prohibited. Failure to comply may result in serious injuries or death.
- › In complex driving conditions, the system may apply unnecessary braking. This may happen, for example, in construction sites, at railway tracks, and when water is sprayed or splashed in front of the vehicle.
- › This system may not work or may not work properly in low-visibility situations (such as rain, snow or fog, and at night).
- › It needs to turn off the front assist system when the vehicle is towing other vehicle.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, some functions of the front assist system will not work properly.

Auto emergency braking

The auto emergency braking system includes forward collision warning system and brake assist function.

For driving forward, this function will detect the risk of collision between your vehicle and pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles (most stationary vehicles or the vehicles driving in the same direction in the same lane as your vehicle) ahead in a limited range, and actively send visual warnings, audible alarms, tactile alarms, as well as try to actively brake to reduce driving speed, minimizing the impact of forward collisions and improving the safety performance of driving vehicles.

- › Off: all auto emergency braking functions are off.
- › Braking: the auto emergency braking function is on.

Forward collision warning

When the vehicle speed is within the working range of the system, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to take effective safety driving measures in time if it detects a pedestrian or a vehicle in a limited range which presents a risk of collision.

Alert messages include:

- › Images and texts on the instrument panel.
- › Audible alarms.
- › Sudden braking.

Intelligent driving assist information system

Brake assist

When the vehicle speed is within the system working range, the system will control the vehicle to automatically apply emergency braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or vehicle and that the driver has not taken safe driving measures within a limited range. However, if a collision is inevitable, the system will minimize the vehicle speed to avoid collisions, and will send image alarms, audible alarms, and tactile alarms to alert the driver. Meanwhile, the vehicle hazard warning lights flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, lowering the risk of rear-end collision by the rear vehicles.

Brake assist can also address the potential risks to a certain extent when the vehicle is turning at a crossroad. Your vehicle speed is within the system working range when the vehicle is making a turn at a road junction. The system will control the vehicle to automatically perform braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or vehicle in the opposite direction within a limited range, and the vehicle will send images, audible alarms, and tactile alarms to remind the driver. Meanwhile, the vehicle hazard warning lights flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, lowering the risk of rear-end collision by the rear vehicles. The system is able to detect pedestrians and vehicles (passenger cars, lorries, buses etc.) moving in the opposite direction to your vehicle.

When the system is working, the following alarm messages will be issued:

- › Images and texts on the instrument panel.
- › Audible alarms.

WARNING

- › The working range of the auto emergency braking system is about 10 to 150 km/h.

Intelligent driving assist information system

2

Driving

- › The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function. For safety reasons, drivers are strictly prohibited from consciously driving to pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles to test the auto emergency braking function.
- › The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function, which is not designed to completely prevent collisions. The system only minimises the impact of a forward collision by trying to reduce the driving speed within a limited range when the vehicle is at risk of an emergency collision. Please do not rely excessively on the auto emergency braking system to avoid serious personal injury and property damage.

- › The auto emergency braking system is limited by several factors and cannot be a substitute for the driver's accurate braking. Meanwhile, the system cannot meet the requirements of accurate functions in all driving states, environments, weather, and road conditions. The system may cause the vehicle to perform unnecessary alarms and braking or omit alarms and brakes. It is necessary to always focus all attention when driving and prepare to take braking and/or turning measures to avoid collisions. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of collisions.
- › The auto emergency braking system cannot be a substitute for maintaining the safe driving distance between your vehicle and a pedestrian, cyclist, and vehicle in front. Please avoid driving too close to the above targets or having radical driving behaviour.
- › When the auto emergency braking system is turned off, the vehicle will not warn or perform braking even if it detects potential hazards. It is recommended that you do not deactivate this function. This function will restart after the vehicle is powered on again.

WARNING

The conditions below may cause the auto emergency braking system to fail to brake, interrupt braking, or reduce braking capacity, including but not limited to the following:

- › The R gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control (ESC) system is not activated or is limited.
- › The brake function cannot fully work (supercooled, overheated and wet brake parts, improper vehicle maintenance, excessive brake or tyre wear, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.).
- › The sensor detection is limited or malfunctioning (e. g., sensor sheltered, and surface dirty).
- › The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- › The front doors are not closed.
- › The driver has been already braking.
- › The driver depresses hard or urgently on the accelerator pedal.
- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.
- › The driver turns on the turn signal light incorrectly in the case of the failure to comply with the traffic regulations when turning at a crossroad.
- › The auto emergency braking cannot be triggered again within about 20 seconds after triggering.
- › No vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians are detected ahead.

- › The vehicle is driving on snow-covered, slippery, gravel or desert roads.

WARNING

- › The auto emergency braking system may not completely bring the speed to a standstill when it is activated. Please be prepared to take over the control of the vehicle at any time if the system interrupts braking.
- › If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal or intervenes by steering during emergency braking, the system will exit emergency braking function. The driver should be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.
- › During the auto emergency braking, the brake pedal will automatically and quickly go down. Please do not place your foot under the brake pedal to prevent injury, or put anything under the brake pedal to affect braking.

Intelligent driving assist information system

› The warning function of the auto emergency braking system is for the driver's reference only and cannot be a substitute for the driver's own attention and judgement. When the system sends out visual texts, pictures, sounds, and tactile alarms, please take immediate collision avoidance measures to remove potential risks. Do not rely on the auto emergency braking system to intervene in braking the vehicle.

› The auto emergency braking system only assists you in safe driving. If the system is affected by several factors, please keep yourself focused, abide by the current traffic laws and regulations, and drive safely. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving.

WARNING

The operations below may cause the auto emergency braking system to fail to give an alarm or interrupt an alarm, including but not limited to the following:

- › The auto emergency braking system may not sound an alarm when the driver has been already braking.
- › The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver steps on the accelerator pedal deeply or sharply.

› The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

WARNING

The function of the auto emergency braking system may be limited, and the targets that make the auto emergency braking system limited or inoperative, include but are not limited to:

- › Oncoming vehicles and motorcycles.
- › Crossing vehicles and motorcycles.
- › Vehicles and motorcycles parked horizontally, obliquely and opposite.
- › Special-shaped vehicles (tractors, mud trucks, etc.).
- › Unconventional small wheeled vehicles (strollers, suitcases, shopping carts, wheelchairs, etc.).
- › Unusual means of transportation (carriages, ox carts, etc.).
- › Traffic lights, warning signs, and roadblocks (cone barrels, etc.).
- › Trash bins, cartons, and parcels.
- › Walls, stones, and road edges.
- › Flying or falling objects.
- › Animals.
- › Other non-vehicle objects.

WARNING

The associated cameras and millimetre-wave radar sensors that the auto emergency braking system relies on have limited detection capabilities, which may result in non-essential alarms and brakes or missed alarms and brakes, including but not limited to the following:

- › The system may not recognize stationary targets at high vehicle speeds.
- › A vehicle (especially a bus, truck, etc.) closely cuts in front of your vehicle.
- › The targets are partially blocked by obstacles, pedestrians, vehicles or other objects, etc.
- › A vehicle is driving on a slippery, cornering and hillside road.
- › The vehicles with trailers, tractors, mud trucks, and special-shaped vehicles appear in front.
- › The front windscreen area within the camera's field of view is blocked by dirt, tags, etc.
- › The visibility is limited by weather conditions (fog, haze, rain, snow, dust storm weather, etc.)
- › A vehicle is driving in a dark surrounding area (at dawn or dusk, at night, driving in a tunnel, etc.)
- › The detected target colour is almost the same as the surrounding environment colour.

- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › There are sudden changes in ambient brightness (strong light, back-lighting, etc., when entering and exiting the entrance and exit of the tunnel).
- › Other radar or camera detection capabilities are limited.

WARNING

The above warnings, reminders and restrictions do not cover all the conditions that may affect the normal working of the auto emergency braking system. More factors can interfere with the auto emergency braking system. Drivers need to concentrate on staying focused, constantly pay attention to the traffic environment, always be ready to take collision avoidance measures and drive safely. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of collisions.

Intelligent driving assist information system

Front cross traffic alert/front collision warning with brake support

When the vehicle starts off to move from a road junction and goes straight (e.g., at a traffic light), the system will respond with an alarm or by braking if it detects a vehicle coming from the right or left and determines that there is a risk of a collision.

【Front cross traffic alert】: the vehicle starts off at a speed of 0 to 10 km/h. The vehicle will issue an alarm if a collision risk is detected.

【Front collision warning with brake support】: the vehicle starts off at a speed of 0 to 5 km/h. The vehicle will brake if a collision risk is detected.

The system is able to detect vehicles (e.g. passenger cars, lorries and buses) moving in a transverse direction to your vehicle at 10 to 60 km/h. When the light is dark, the detection range will be affected, so please turn on the headlights when driving at night.

Forward collision sensitivity

Sensitivity is divided into three levels.

- › 【Low】: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is close to pedestrians or vehicles ahead.
- › 【Standard】: the system will give an alarm reminder when the distance between your vehicle and pedestrians or vehicles ahead is set to the normal value by the system.

- › 【High】: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is far from pedestrians or vehicles ahead.

Side and rear assist

The side and rear assist system can detect vehicles behind your vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the 【Vehicle settings】 → 【Intelligent driving】 →

【Side and rear assist】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

- › Keep both sides of the rear bumper clean, do not paste any objects, and ensure that no foreign objects such as ice, snow, mud, etc. may cover the sensors, so as not to affect the normal work of the sensors.
- › Improper repair or modification of the vehicle may cause the sensors to be dislocated, which may affect the proper operation of the side assist system. Therefore, it is recommended that you maintain and repair your vehicle at the authorised service centre.

⚠ WARNING

In some cases, it may not work properly or even not work. For example:

- › For stationary targets (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.).
- › Driving in adverse conditions such as rain, and snow.
- › Driving on sharp turns, slopes, very wide or narrow lanes.
- › It needs to turn off the side and rear assist system when the vehicle is towing other vehicle.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, the side and rear assist system will not work properly.

Warning lights



46A8631F17BB

The warning lights are located on the surfaces of the left and right side mirrors.

⚠ WARNING

Do not paste any objects on the warning lights to avoid affecting the system warning function.

Blind spot monitoring

During driving (with the speed exceeding 12 km/h), when the system detects that there is a vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors or a quick approaching vehicle behind the adjacent lane, the warning light on the corresponding side should be on. If you turn on the turn signal light at the same side at this time, the warning light will flash and an audible alarm will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue changing the lane.

Door open warning

When the system detects that there are approaching vehicles and bicycles and other targets in the adjacent lanes on both sides after the vehicle stops and that there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the warning light at the corresponding side will go on. If the passenger continues to open the door on the corresponding side at this point, the warning light will flash and an audible alarm will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue opening the door.

i NOTICE

The door open warning system will only function in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle power supply is in ON mode.

Intelligent driving assist information system

› It is within 3 minutes of switching the power supply mode from ON to OFF mode.

When the power saving delay function setting value is less than 3 minutes, it will be executed according to the power saving delay setting.

- › There are obstacles blocking. The system cannot detect the objects behind other parked vehicles or obstacles.
- › The current vehicle speed is too high or too low.
- › The driver depresses the accelerator pedal firmly.
- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

Rear collision warning

When the system detects that there is a fast approaching vehicle behind the subject vehicle and there is a risk of collision, the hazard warning lights will flash quickly, accompanied by an audible alarm and the instrument cluster prompts to remind the driver that a dangerous target is approaching, and to warn the driver of the rear vehicle to drive safely.

Rear cross traffic alert/braking

【Rear cross traffic alert】: when the function is enabled, if during reversing the system detects that there is a risk of collision with a moving vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors, it will give an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

【Rear cross traffic braking】: when the function is enabled, limited braking can be applied when there is a risk in reversing, reducing the risk of collision.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear cross traffic assist function is limited in some cases. For example,

Lane assist

The lane assist system is designed for a vehicle travelling on motorways, and other roads in good condition. By using a camera on the windscreen to detect lane boundaries, the system reminds the driver to make a correction when the driver accidentally deviates from the lane. Some of the system functions even assist the driver in correcting the direction to reduce the risk of a collision.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the 【Vehicle settings】 → 【Intelligent driving】 → 【Lane assist】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

⚠ CAUTION

The lane assist system properly works only when the lane boundaries are clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › Lane boundaries are unclear, non-standard, or otherwise obscured.
- › Things on the road surface (such as water, cracks, ruts, shadow, lettering, pedestrian crossings, bumps and pits) are interfering with the detection of the lane markings.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn, a narrow road, or a road prone to rollover.
- › Your vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.
- › The vehicle is travelling in the construction road area.

i NOTICE

- › If you turn on the turn signal light, turn the steering wheel, and depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal before passing through a lane boundary, the system will not send an alarm. In this case, the system considers you attempt to drive the vehicle.
- › If the driver is only controlling the steering wheel very lightly, the system may not be able to detect the driver's grip on the wheel. The instrument cluster will then send an alarm.

! WARNING

- › The lane assist function is not fully automatic driving and cannot be a substitute for your visual inspection. You need to stay focused and hold the steering wheel during the use of the lane assist. Do not rely on lane assist function completely.
- › It needs to turn off the lane assist system when the vehicle is towing other vehicle.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, the lane assist system will not work properly.

Lane assist function

After turning on the lane assist function, you can choose the assist type, which is divided into lane keeping assist and lane departure warning.

Intelligent driving assist information system

2

Driving

- › **【Lane keeping assist】** : it will help the driver correct the steering wheel angle to keep the vehicle in the lane if the driver accidentally drifts out of the lane and does not turn on the corresponding turn signal light. If the correction fails, the system will send an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely when the vehicle crosses over the boundary, and the lane boundary on the instrument cluster turns red. If the lane keeping assist function detects that the driver is actively turning, the lane keeping assist function will exit and return the steering control to the driver.
- › **【Lane departure warning】** : it will send an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely if the driver accidentally drifts out of the lane and does not turn on the corresponding turn signal light, and the corresponding lane boundary on the instrument cluster turns red.

i NOTICE

- › The lane assist function will work only when the vehicle speed is 60 to 150 km/h.
- › The lane keeping assist function will not continuously control the vehicle, and will only control the vehicle for turning when it detects that the vehicle deviates from the lane boundary.

- › The lane departure warning function only has an alarm function and will not control the vehicle. When the lane departure warning function sends an alarm, the driver needs to control the steering wheel in time for turning.

When the lane assist function is turned on, the lane boundary on the instrument cluster will be as follows:

- › Not shown: it indicates that the system has not detected any lane boundary.
- › Grey: it indicates that the system has detected the lane boundary.
- › Green: it indicates that the system is correcting the steering wheel.
- › Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds an alarm, and the driver needs to correct the direction in time to make the vehicle return to the lane.

Alert mode

There are three alert modes: vibration, sound, and vibration & sound.

Lane departure detection sensitivity

Lane departure detection sensitivity is divided into three levels: low, standard and high.

- › Low: under the same conditions, the sensitivity reminder is later than normal, and the vehicle is closer to the lane boundary.

- › Standard: normal sensitivity.
- › High: under the same conditions, the sensitivity reminder is earlier than normal, and the vehicle is far from the lane boundary.

Emergency lane keeping (ELK)

After the emergency lane keeping is activated, when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane or turns on the turn signal light to change lanes, the ELK will control the vehicle to quickly return to the central area of the current lane to reduce the risk of collision if the following situations are detected.

- › There is a risk of collision with the oncoming vehicle in the adjacent lane or a vehicle from the rear in the same direction.
- › There is a curb outside the lane and there is a risk of collision.

NOTICE

The emergency lane keeping function can only work when the vehicle speed is within 60 to 150 km/h.

WARNING

In some cases, the emergency lane keeping function may not work properly or not work. For example:

- › For smaller targets (motorcycles, bicycles, etc.)
- › For stationary targets.

- › The current vehicle is moving too close to the preceding vehicle and prevents the camera from detecting it.
- › The rear vehicle is driving too close to the current vehicle and prevents the sensor from detecting it.
- › Vehicles driving in the same direction as adjacent lanes have similar speeds.

Smart dodge

When smart dodge is activated and the smart cruise control system is turned on and working, and the system detects that the vehicle is about to overtake a large vehicle (such as a van, lorry, or bus) in an adjacent lane, it will control your vehicle to move slightly away from the larger vehicle. After overtaking the large vehicle, your vehicle will return to the central area of the current lane.

NOTICE

Smart dodge will only work when the vehicle speed is 60 to 150 km/h.

CAUTION

The smart dodge function may not work or may not work properly in certain situations. For example:

- › The system detects that there is a large vehicle on the adjacent lane on one side, and there are vehicles on the adjacent lane on the other side, or the adjacent lane on the other side is a curb.
- › The vehicle is driving in severe weather such as night, heavy fog, rain and snow.
- › The vehicle is in a curve.

Adaptive cruise control system

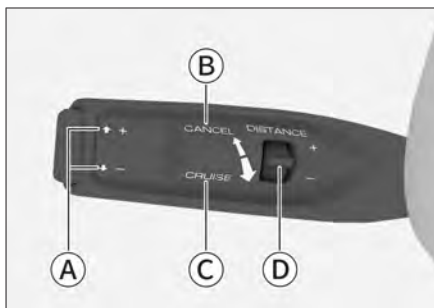
For driving on a straight motorway where traffic is flowing well, the adaptive cruise control system keeps the vehicle at a set speed without the driver having to depress the accelerator pedal. If the system detects that a vehicle in front of your vehicle is moving at a speed slower than your set cruising speed, the system will adjust to allow your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead at a preset, safe distance.

WARNING

- › The adaptive cruise control system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own assessment of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. Under any circumstances, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.


- › The adaptive cruise control system should be switched off when not in use to avoid activating it accidentally.
- › Improper use of the adaptive cruise control system may result in a collision.
- › Only use the adaptive cruise control system in good weather when the traffic is flowing well.
- › The adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use in conditions such as urban areas, winding roads, narrow roads, wet and slippery roads, heavy rain or other harsh weather conditions.
- › When driving on slopes, you are not recommended to use the adaptive cruise control system mainly based on the followings:
The system cannot maintain a set speed while the vehicle is travelling uphill or downhill.
When the vehicle ahead passes the top or bottom of the slope, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle ahead, causing sudden acceleration or late braking.
- › It needs to turn off the adaptive cruise control system when the vehicle is towing other vehicle.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, the adaptive cruise control system will not work properly.

Intelligent driving assist information system



- Ⓐ Speed adjustment
- Ⓑ Cancelling cruise
- Ⓒ Activating the cruise
- Ⓓ Distance level adjustment

Activating the cruise


1. While driving, if the adaptive cruise control activation conditions are met, the adaptive cruise control indicator light  on the instrument cluster will be on and in white.

NOTICE

Activation conditions:

- › All doors are completely closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › The vehicle is started and the D gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › The parking brake is not applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
- › The vehicle is not in snow, mud or sand mode.

› The trailer mode is turned off.

2. Move the control lever in the direction close to the steering wheel to the CRUISE position and then release it, and the adaptive cruise control system is activated. Meanwhile, the adaptive cruise control indicator light  on the instrument cluster will be on and in green. At this time, according to the current road condition information, you can use available functions such as following start and cornering assist.

NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.

CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the adaptive cruise control system is 30 km/h. When your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system will set the speed to 30 km/h; when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will turn on cruise function at the current speed.

Cruising speed adjustment

Move the control lever up or down to the + or - position to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Intelligent driving assist information system

Move the control lever up or down to the + or - position and hold to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. Release the cruise control lever when the desired speed is reached.

i NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, it will follow the vehicle in front according to the set distance.

Adjusting distance level

Toggle the distance control rod to adjust the vehicle distance setting.

The distance setting for each level is not a fixed distance, and the following distance will vary with the change of vehicle speed at the same level.

i NOTICE

› If your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead and cannot be slowed down automatically enough by the cruise control, the system will alert you and you will need to apply the brake pedal in time to maintain a safe distance. However, the system cannot issue a takeover request in time in all situations due to sensor limitations.

- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delay in reaction in the event of unexpected situations, and it is always your responsibility to adjust the distance level appropriately.
- › A larger distance level shall be chosen for driving on wet and slippery roads in comparison with driving on dry roads.

Cancelling cruise

There are two ways to cancel cruise:

- › Depress the brake pedal.
- › Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the CANCEL position.

Cruising speed recovery

While driving, move the control lever in the direction close to steering wheel until it moves to the CRUISE position and then release it after few seconds to activate the cruise function.

i NOTICE

After the cruise function is resumed, the system will use the current speed and the last cruising speed, whichever is higher.

i NOTICE

The cruise function will be automatically exited in the following situations:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 155 km/h.

Intelligent driving assist information system

- › The accelerator pedal is depressed for acceleration for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › A vehicle door is opened.
- › The parking brake is engaged.
- › The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is activated.
- › HDC is activated.
- › ESC is activated.
- › TCS is activated.
- › The vehicle rolls back.
- › The brake disk is overheated.
- › The vehicle is turned off.
- › The trailer mode is turned on.
- › The vehicle is in snow, mud or sand mode.

Following start function

This function allows your vehicle to follow another vehicle at 0 to 150 km/h.

In the case of traffic congestion, it allows your vehicle to follow the vehicle in front of it and slow down to a stop. In this case:

- › If the vehicle ahead moves off again within 30 seconds, your vehicle will follow.
- › If the vehicle ahead remains stationary for longer (30 seconds to 3 minutes), depress the accelerator pedal gently to restart the system.

- › If the vehicle ahead remains stationary for longer than 3 minutes, your vehicle will automatically engage the parking brake.
- › If the driver opens the door or releases the seat belt, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

NOTICE

Cancelling cruise function will automatically turn off the following start function.

Curve assist function

When the cruise function is enabled, if the vehicle is entering a curve at a too high speed, the curve assist function will reduce the vehicle speed appropriately.

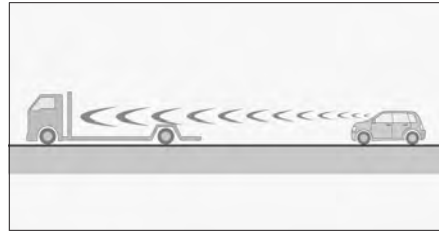
WARNING

- › When entering, exiting or driving through a curve, the system may not be able to detect vehicles ahead in your lane promptly. This could cause late braking. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.
- › When driving through a curve, the system may mistakenly detect vehicles in other lanes, causing unnecessary braking.

Intelligent driving assist information system

- › For driving on a road with sharp turns (such as switchbacks), if the vehicle ahead moves out of the detection range of the sensor, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly. The driver must be cautious and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.

- › The rear of the vehicle ahead is small or is raised very high off the ground.



706CBE4C4337

Function limits

The cruise system may not apply the brakes in the following situations:

- › Another vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle.
- › There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speed.
- › There is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, cone barrel, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › Another vehicle in front of your vehicle slows down suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The front of the vehicle is raised due to the luggage space being overloaded.
- › The vehicle is travelling on a curve or narrow road.

- › The use of the steering wheel or your position in your lane is erratic.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Smart cruise control system

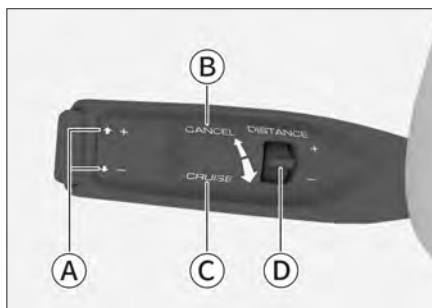
The smart cruise control system is based on the adaptive cruise control system. When the sensor detects the lane markings, it can assist the driver to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane and help the driver control the vehicle safely and easily.

⚠ WARNING

- › This system cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Under poor light conditions (e.g. at night and on cloudy days), rapid changes in light (e.g. in and out of tunnels), large-scale shadows on the ground (objects and landscape features projected on the road surface), and other circumstances, the recognition capability of the sensor will be limited, so the system cannot replace the driver's judgement of road conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.
- › It needs to turn off the smart cruise control system when the vehicle is towing other vehicle.
- › After the trailer power port is connected, the smart cruise control system will not work properly.

⚠ CAUTION


When using the smart cruise control system, the driver must hold the steering wheel and look ahead at the road. If the driver takes his/her hands off the steering wheel for a long time, the system will send an alarm to remind the driver of taking over the vehicle. If the driver fails to take over the vehicle in time, the system will perform an emergency stop in the lane. Emergency stop process: turn on the hazard warning lights, slowly brake and stop the vehicle, switch to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake.



15CA31279E9C

- (A) Speed adjustment
- (B) Cancelling the cruise
- (C) Activating the cruise
- (D) Distance level adjustment

Activating the cruise


1. During driving, if the smart cruise activation conditions are met, the smart cruise indicator light  on the instrument cluster will go on in white.

CAUTION

Conditions for activation:

- › All doors are completely closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › The vehicle is started and the D gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The system has detected the lane markings.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
- › The vehicle is not in snow, mud or sand mode.
- › The trailer mode is turned off.

If the above conditions are not met, the system will exit. In this case, the driver should immediately take over the vehicle brake pedal, accelerator pedal and steering wheel to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

2. Move the control lever twice consecutively in the direction close to the steering wheel to the CRUISE position and release it. The smart cruise control system is activated, and the smart cruise indicator light  on the instrument cluster will go on in green.

CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the smart cruise control system is 30 km/h. When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system sets the vehicle speed to 30 km/h; when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will activate the cruise function at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruising speed

Move the control lever up or down to the + or - position and then release it to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Move the control lever up or down to the + or - position and hold to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. Release the cruise control lever when the desired speed is reached.

NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, your vehicle will follow the front vehicle at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Move the distance level adjustment lever to adjust the distance level.

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the speed of the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › Setting up a low distance level may result in a delay in reaction in the event of unexpected situations, and it is always your responsibility to adjust the distance level appropriately.
- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Canceling the cruise

There are two ways to cancel the cruise:

- › The brake pedal is depressed.
- › Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the CANCEL position and release it.

! WARNING

The vehicle will not be controlled by cruise control system after smart cruise function is cancelled, and the driver should take over control of the steering wheel, accelerator pedal and brake pedal of the vehicle immediately to avoid the danger of untimely take-over.

i NOTICE

When the driver applies a greater force to the steering wheel or turns the wheel in the opposite direction, the vehicle steering control is temporarily taken over and the smart cruise lateral function is temporarily inhibited. Only the longitudinal control is enabled, downgrading to adaptive cruise control. After the driver ends the control of the steering wheel, the smart cruise will activate automatically again.

Cruising speed recovery

While driving, move the control lever in the direction close to steering wheel until it moves to the CRUISE position and then release it after few seconds to activate the cruise control system.

i NOTICE

After the cruise function is resumed, the system will use the current speed and the last cruising speed, whichever is higher, as the current cruising speed.

i NOTICE

The cruise function will automatically exit in the following situations:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 155 km/h.
- › The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › More than 5 minutes has passed after cancelling the cruise.

Intelligent driving assist information system

- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver's seat belt is released.
- › A vehicle door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock brake system is activated.
- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › ESC is activated.
- › TCS is activated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disk is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.
- › The trailer mode is turned on.
- › The vehicle is in snow, mud or sand mode.

CAUTION

The smart cruise function may not work or may not work properly in certain situations. For example:

- › There are no lane markings, or the lane markings on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- › There is an object on the road that affects the identification of the lane markings (such as water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.

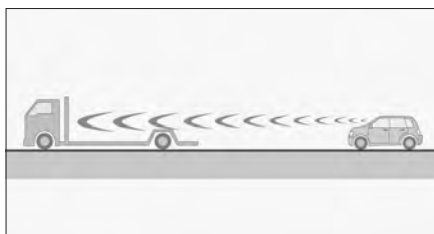
- › The lanes merge or divide and are not clear in some areas, such as intersections, ramps, and waiting areas.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn or a narrow road.
- › Your vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take the braking measures:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.
- › There is a laterally running, oncoming, stationary or low-speed vehicle.
- › An oncoming vehicle is running in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, cone barrel, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.

- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The followed vehicle has a relatively small tail dimension or very large ground clearance.



- › The steering wheel operation is unstable or your position in the lane is unstable.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Lane change assist with turn signal

As a sub-function of smart cruise control system, the lane change assist with turn signal can be activated after the smart cruise control is turned on. If the driver turns on a turn signal lamp while driving on a motorway, and the lane markings are clear and the surrounding environment allows a lane change, the system will plan a path and perform the lane change.

You can turn the lane change assist with turn signal on or off by going to **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Smart cruise】** → **【Lane Change Assist with Turn Signal】** on the multi-media display.

⚠ WARNING

During the lane change, the driver needs to stay focused at all times and hold the steering wheel for driving safety.

The lane change assist with turn signal is not applicable for all situations and cannot take the place of the driver's judgement regarding lane change conditions. In any case, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

Intelligent driving assist information system

i NOTICE

After the vehicle is powered off, in the event of powering on the vehicle again, the lane change assist with turn signal will be off by default when the vehicle is started again.

Activating the lane change assist with turn signal

A CAUTION

For using the lane change assist with turn signal, the following basic conditions must be met:

- › The turn signal lamps are working normally.
- › The map positioning system is working properly, and the vehicle is traveling on a highway.
- › The hazard warning light is not turned on.
- › The vehicle speed is 80 to 120 km/h.
- › Lane markings on the lane change side are clear broken lines.
- › There is a safe distance from the front and rear vehicles in the current lane and the target lane.

1. Ensure that basic conditions for using the lane change assist with turn signal are met.
2. Move the corresponding turn signal lamp lever.

3. Check the lane change environment, make sure the lane change environment is safe, and then perform the lane change.
4. After the lane change is completed, the system will automatically turn off the turn signal lamps. At this time, the smart cruise control system will continue to work to assist the driver to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.

Canceling the lane change assist with turn signal

The driver can cancel the lane change assist with turn signal in the following ways:

- › The driver takes over the steering wheel, depresses the brake pedal, or uses the cruise lever to cancel the function.
- › Move the turn signal lamp lever in the opposite direction.

i NOTICE

When using the lane change assist with turn signal for lane change, if the following situations occur, the lane change will automatically stop, and the system will remind the driver through the combination instrument and sound to take over the vehicle in time:

- › The system detects that the lane change environment is unsafe. For example, during lane change, the lane markings on the lane change side become solid lines, or there are fast passing vehicles on the lane change side.
- › The lane markings are not clear, or the curvature of the curve is too large.
- › The system detects that the driver's hands are off the steering wheel.

Voice broadcast

Voice broadcast type can be set.

- › Concise type: It only provides you with key voice prompt information for intelligent driving function.
- › General type: It provides you with more detailed voice prompt information for intelligent driving function.

Traffic assist

The traffic sign information function is used to recognise the traffic signs through the camera on the front windscreen and display them on the instrument cluster to give a prompt to the driver.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Traffic sign】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Traffic sign recognition

After the traffic sign recognition function is activated, the traffic sign can be recognised and displayed on the instrument cluster to remind the driver.

Over-speed alarm

After the traffic sign recognition function is activated, the over-speed alarm function can be enabled. After the speed limit sign is recognised, in case of over-speeding, the system will give an alarm to remind the driver to reduce the speed to a suitable range as soon as possible.

Cruise speed limit

After activating the traffic sign recognition function, you can enable the speed limit function.

When cruising, if the system recognises a speed limit sign greater than or equal to 30 km/h (such as 100 km/h), the system will remind the driver whether to adjust the current cruising speed to the limit speed.

WARNING

The traffic sign information function is designed to alert the driver to note traffic signs and is not intended to be used in all cases and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road speed limit messages.

Intelligent driving assist information system

In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

CAUTION

The traffic sign information function can work properly only when the speed sign is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › A sign fades.
- › A sign is on a curve.
- › A sign is not properly positioned.
- › A sign is rotating or is damaged.
- › A sign is fully or partially blocked.
- › A sign is fully or partially covered by frost, snow, dust, etc.
- › A speed sign is placed in the position that is too far or too high.
- › A speed limit reminder or sign is attached to the road surface.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › Your vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

NOTICE

- › The unit for speed limit signs that the system identifies will be consistent with the speed unit of the instrument.
- › For multiple speed limit values on the same speed limit sign, the system will show the maximum value.
- › The system only displays the maximum speed limit of the current driving lane. Please refer to the actual speed limit of the current road.
- › The system may not be able to recognise a speed limit sign when the vehicle is turning.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

System introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tyre pressure and temperature in real time and alerts the driver to take appropriate actions to avoid an accident when a tyre is abnormal.




CAUTION

- › If the tyre used for replacement is not a standard spare tyre, it may affect the normal operation of TPMS.
- › TPMS may not work properly when the tyre chain is installed or the wheel is covered.
- › TPMS may not work properly due to radio interference.

› After replacement of tyres or tyre rotation, start the vehicle and drive at a speed higher than 30 km/h for about 9 minutes, and then the TPMS will automatically identify the tyre pressure, tyre temperature and location. If the tyre pressure and the tyre temperature are not displayed or displayed incorrectly after 9 minutes, contact authorised service centre to reset TPMS as soon as possible.

- › TPMS cannot replace regular tyre maintenance. Check the tyre frequently to ensure proper tyre pressure, even if no alarm is received from TPMS.
- › Tyre pressure can be affected by factors such as the heat generated from vehicle operations, the external environment, journey time, etc. Generally, tyre pressure has a fluctuation of 30 kPa approximately, which is normal.

Monitoring function

Press the  home button on the steering wheel to switch the instrument to the driving data interface. Press  up or  down switching button on the driving data interface to switch the interface to the tyre pressure monitoring interface, on which you can view the pressure and temperature information of the four tyres in use in real time.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the abnormal tyre icon on the tyre pressure monitoring interface shows red and flashes.

Alarm function

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the instrument cluster will send out the following alarm as follows:

- › The multi-information display will display the corresponding alarm interface. The abnormal tyre icon is displayed as red and sends out audible alarm.
- › Tyre pressure monitoring system warning lamp (⚠) on the instrument cluster illuminates.

If the tyre alarm message appears in the trip, you should avoid performing sudden, acute turns and emergency braking. Reduce the speed, drive to a safe area and stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Then contact authorised service centre for trouble handling.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Introduction of fatigue driving reminder

The fatigue driving reminder system identifies the driver's fatigue level by continuously detecting the driver's operation of the vehicle. If the system recognizes that driver is fatigue, sound and visual alarms will be given to alert the driver to drive with care.

WARNING

- › Fatigue driving is strictly prohibited. Reasonable parking intervals should always be arranged for long-distance driving to ensure adequate rest.
- › It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that he/she is in a good driving condition.

- › Fatigue driving warning function is only an auxiliary tool and may not be able to actually monitor driver fatigue. In some cases, the system may judge normal driving behavior as fatigue.

Instructions

You can turn on or off the fatigued driving reminder function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Driving】** → **【Driver fatigue alert】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The system will send out an alarm message when it detects that the vehicle has been driven continuously for 4 hours at a speed exceeding 65 km/h.

WARNING

- › While the speed of the vehicle remains less than 65 km/h, the system will not activate the warning even if the driver shows signs of fatigue.
- › In some situations, the driver's abilities may be unaffected even though he/she is fatigued. In such circumstances, the system will not issue a warning to the driver. For this reason, when the driver shows signs of fatigue, it is very important to stop the vehicle and rest in a timely manner, regardless of whether the driver condition monitoring system has issued a warning.

Driver fatigue alert system

- › This feature cannot be used to loosen driving restrictions. Regular stops must be arranged during the long driving for adequate rest.

Functional limitations

When the fatigue driving reminder function is turned on, the following situations may cause the fatigue driving reminder function to be limited or not work at all:

- › Cruise control function activated
- › The front wiper is on.
- › The wiper control combination switch is currently being operated.
- › The driver side door is open.
- › Depress the brake pedal.
- › The hazard warning lamp is on.
- › The driver's seat belt is not used.
- › The turn signal lamp is on.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Intelligent monitoring system

Driver monitoring system

You can turn on or off this function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【In-car】** → **【Driver monitoring system】** → **【Driver monitoring system】** interface on the multimedia display screen. After the function is enabled, you can conduct the following settings:

- › **【Distraction monitoring】** : after this function is enabled, when the system recognizes that the driver is distracted in driving, the system will issue a voice prompt, and the instrument cluster will display an alarm interface at the same time. If the driver continues being distracted, the system will automatically change the content of the voice prompt according to the driver's degree of distraction.

CAUTION

If the turn signal light is turned on or the steering wheel is turned to a certain angle, the distraction monitoring function will be restricted, and no alarm will be given.

- › **【Fatigue monitoring】** : after this function is turned on, when the system recognises that the driver is in a fatigued state during driving, it will issue a sound prompt or voice prompt according to the degree of fatigue, and the instrument cluster will display an alarm interface at the same time. When the system sends out a voice prompt, it means that the driver's fatigue has greatly affected the driving safety. Choose to accept the system suggestion or stop and have a rest in a safe place as soon as possible.
- › **【Dangerous behaviour monitoring】** : when the function is turned on, the system will give a voice prompt when it recognises a dangerous movement by the driver during driving.

WARNING

The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot guarantee accurate identification in all conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distraction driving are strictly prohibited. They must always concentrate on driving carefully.

Intelligent monitoring system

The following conditions may affect the function of the driver monitoring system, including but not limited:

- › The camera or the driver's face is disturbed by direct light.
- › The camera or the driver's face is blocked.
- › The driver wears anti-infrared glasses.
- › The scenes of squinting and closing eyes are caused by the driver's eye rubbing.

CAUTION

- › Please check and ensure the camera is clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.
- › Never use rough or sharp material to clean the camera.
- › Never knock on the camera.

VMDR biometric identification system

You can make the following settings to the vital signs monitoring function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【In-car】** → **【Driver monitoring system】** interface on the multimedia display screen:

- › **【VMDR biometric identification】** : you can turn on or off the VMDR biometric identification function temporarily.(▷ Page 259)

NOTICE

Whenever the power supply is switched to ON mode, the VMDR biometric identification system is turned on by default.

- › **【Delay alarm】** : you can turn on or off the delay alarm function. When this function is turned on, the VMDR biometric identification system will delay the alarm for 10 minutes.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Hill descent control system introduction

While going downhill, the hill descent control system (HDC) may actively brake to ensure that the driver can maintain a constant speed and drive downhill safely.




⚠ WARNING

- › HDC is intended only to be an aid. At all times the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and always pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
- › In case of a very steep slope, the HDC may not function and thus the vehicle can't be driven down the slope at a constant speed. At this time, you can control the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal.

Instructions



Press the button to activate or deactivate the HDC.

- › After the HDC is activated, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on.
- › After the HDC is deactivated, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel turns off.
- › When the HDC is working, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes.

i NOTICE

- › After activating the HDC, you can still adjust the speed by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- › The HDC will be automatically off when the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h.

Driving assist system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Driving assist system safety tips

About traffic safety

Never take a risk in driving because the vehicle is equipped with driving assist systems and always ensure that the vehicle speed and driving style adapt to vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.

About modification

Suspension modification or use of tyres or wheels of non-specified size will impact driving assist systems and may cause system malfunctions.

About sound and vibration

Some driving assist systems (such as anti-lock brake system) may create a vibration during work or the sound of the motor during working may be heard, which does not indicate a malfunction.

When the vehicle is started across due to battery loss, the engine may not run smoothly and the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system warning light turns on. This is caused by low battery voltage. This does not mean that the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system is faulty.

Anti-lock brake system

When brake is applied or the vehicle is braked suddenly during driving on wet and slippery road, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps to prevent wheels from locking to maintain steering control of the vehicle.

CAUTION

During emergency braking, do not step on the brake pedal several times or gently step on it. Otherwise, it will lengthen the braking distance.

The ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to maintain an adequate safe distance from the vehicle traveling in front as your vehicle may require a longer braking distance, compared with vehicles not equipped with the ABS in the following cases:

- When driving on muddy, gravel or snowy road.
- When driving with tyre chains in place.
- When driving on bumpy road.

- › When driving on potholes or uneven road.

The ABS may not work effectively in the following conditions:

- › When the limit of tyre grip performance is exceeded (like using excessive wear tyre on snowy road).
- › When driving at a high speed on wet and slippery road.

Electronic braking force distribution system

The electronic braking force distribution (EBD) system is capable of automatically adjusting the front and rear braking force ratio to enhance braking efficiency. It complements the ABS for greater braking stability and thereby vehicle stability.

Braking force assist system

Stepping on brake pedal very quickly can trigger the braking force assist system to help increase the braking effect and shorten the braking distance during emergency braking.

Traction control system

When you start or accelerate on a wet and slippery road, the traction control system (TCS) helps to keep a driving force and avoid driving wheel spinning.

Rollover prevention system

When the vehicle turns a corner, the rollover prevention system (RMI) determines whether there is a risk of rollover by monitoring the movement status of the vehicle. If any, RMI will decelerate one or more wheels to refrain the vehicle from a rollover accident.

HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)

When the driver starts on a slope and releases the brake pedal, the hill-start hold control (HHC) can maintain the braking force for about 2 seconds to effectively avoid rolling.

WARNING

When starting on a slope greater than 30%, the vehicle may still roll. Therefore, do not excessively rely on this function. Please pay attention to the safety of the driving.

Secondary collision mitigation system

The secondary collision mitigation system (SCM) will automatically apply the braking to the vehicle after the first collision (airbag deployment) to reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle, thereby reducing the chance and injury of a second collision.


Driving assist system

Electronic power steering system

The electric power steering system can adjust the power in real time by monitoring the driving speed, so as to ensure the portability of low-speed steering and the stability of high-speed steering and enhance the sense of security.

Electronic stability control system

The electronic stability control (ESC) system can help reduce the risk of side slip, and improve driving stability by braking individual wheel under certain driving situation.

When ESC works, the electronic stability control system warning light  on the instrument panel flashes. Make sure to be more careful at this time.

NOTICE


Generally speaking, the ESC is on throughout the driving process. You can deactivate the system only under following special conditions:

- › Drive with tyre chains.
- › Drive in deep snow or on soft ground.
- › The vehicle is stuck and you need to free it.

Activate ESC as soon as you exit above conditions.

Turning on or off the system

You can turn on or off the electronic stability control system through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【Driving】** → **【ESC Off】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The electronic stability control OFF indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on, indicating that the electronic stability control system is deactivated.

NOTICE

The ESC will automatically turn on in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle is started.
- › The vehicle speed exceeds 85 km/h.

Dynamic direction stability assist system

Under the condition that the adhesion coefficients of left and right wheels are quite different (for example, some snow and ice roads, wet roads, etc.), when the vehicle is braked or accelerated urgently, the DST will automatically adjust the steering wheel angle based on the rotational speed difference between the two wheels on the same axis and the dynamic variation of the vehicle, to correct the driving direction of the vehicle.

The dynamic directional stability assist system can be turned on or off via the multimedia display screen: **【Vehicle Settings】** → **【Driving】** → **【DST】** .

i NOTICE

Only when the ESC function is enabled can the DST function be used properly.

⚠ WARNING

- › The dynamic directional stability assist system is only an auxiliary tool. It cannot replace the driver's judgment on road and traffic conditions, and cannot replace the driver. In any case, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › When the dynamic directional stability assistant system is working, the steering wheel angle is automatically adjusted only within a limited range. The driver needs to actively adjust the steering wheel angle to ensure correct direction of driving, depending on actual driving conditions.

Emission control system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Reminder

The emission control system may vary with different engine models. For the particular equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Do not modify any part of the engine or emission control system.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor measures the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust gases and reports that information to the ECU in order to regulate the engine's fuel-air ratio for optimum combustion efficiency and to reduce the amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter is the most important external purifier installed in the vehicle's exhaust system. The catalytic converter contains metallic catalysts that convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides into harmless carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen through oxidation and reduction reactions.

As long as the catalytic converter is used correctly, it generally does not require maintenance. Thus, it should not be disassembled without cause. If replacement is necessary, please contact the service provider.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter, please pay attention to the following items:

- › Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with more than the standard amount of manganese or sulphur.
- › Do not drive a vehicle with extremely low fuel level. If the fuel is exhausted, it will cause the engine to misfire (this may be confirmed by unstable engine operation or a loss of power), damaging the catalytic converter.
- › Do not idle the engine at a high speed for an extended time (5 minutes or longer).

- › When a problem with the engine is indicated (such as shutdown or performance degradation), please do not continue driving the vehicle.
- › Do not operate the engine with the spark plugs removed.
- › Do not start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it.
- › Do not add too much engine oil.
- › Please avoid striking the catalytic converter.

Turbocharger

The turbocharger can improve fuel efficiency of the engine, improve the vehicle's power and performance, and reduce the displacement of harmful compounds such as particulates and nitrogen oxides in the engine exhaust.

Fuel evaporation control unit

When the vehicle is running normally, the fuel evaporation control unit can make the fuel steam enter the engine to burn, so as to prevent the fuel steam from entering the atmosphere.

Crankcase emission control unit

The crankcase emission control unit guides the mixed gases within the crankcase (such as uncombusted fuel vapours, water vapour, and exhaust) through a connected pipe into an appropriate place in the air-intake pipe to return them to the cylinders and be combusted again. Thus, the exhaust gas can be reduced while the engine fuel economy improved.

On-board diagnostic system

The engine system malfunction warning light is part of the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system.

The engine electronic control unit equipped with the on-board diagnostic system stores various fault information (especially when it comes to exhaust-emissions fault information). The fault information will be cleared if the battery cables are disconnected, making a rapid diagnosis difficult. Therefore, do not disconnect the battery cable when checking the cause of the engine system malfunction warning light illumination.

When the vehicle is diagnosing the fuel evaporation control system, the carbon canister cut-off valve at the rear of the vehicle will produce the normal operating sound of "thump".

Emission control system

Gasoline particulate filter

Function introduction

The gasoline particulate filter (GPF) is part of the vehicle's exhaust gas emission reduction system. It can capture small particles before they enter into the atmosphere, reducing atmospheric pollution.

WARNING

Flammable materials are forbidden to be added to the exhaust pipe, gasoline particulate filter or heat shield as heat will be generated during regeneration process. Otherwise, it can lead to fire accidents.

Regeneration procedure

During driving, when the GPF reaches certain conditions, the vehicle automatically initiates a regeneration procedure when the driving conditions are met. At this point, the instrument cluster will display the prompt of **【Particulate filter is being regenerated】**. The regeneration procedure will burn the particulate matter sufficiently to keep the GPF in a stable and efficient working state.

During regeneration process, it is recommended that the vehicle is driven in accordance with the following conditions until the alarm prompt message is cleared, and the regeneration procedure is completed. (For ease of viewing, do not hide this alarm prompt message during this procedure.)

- › Try to drive at a constant speed on roads in good conditions, while maintaining a speed of more than 80 km/h.
- › Avoid idling the engine.
- › Avoid stopping and try to keep the engine running.

CAUTION

- › If the driving conditions are not satisfied and the vehicle can not automatically start the regeneration procedure for a long time, an alarm prompt of **【Particulate filter needs regenerating】** will appear on the instrument cluster. At this point, please start the engine (the water temperature gauge indicates that it is in the medium or above position), please drive the vehicle according to the driving conditions in the regeneration procedure and allow the vehicle to start the regeneration procedure. Not following the above operation may affect the proper operation of the engine and particulate filter, and may result in damage to vehicle components.

- › Gasoline to be added must meet national regulatory standards. Avoid the use of fuel additives, etc. Prevent the increase of particulate matter or catalyst poisoning due to fuel quality problems.
- › Please use the engine oil with the specified type regularly.

WARNING

Please observe all the traffic laws and regulations when performing the automatic regeneration procedure.

NOTICE

Please observe the following recommendations in your daily driving:

- › Avoid long-term or frequent low-speed and full-throttle running of the engine.
- › Avoid long-term or frequent engine idling.
- › Avoid frequent vehicle stopping or engine shutdown.
- › Avoid frequent short-distance driving.

Head up display system (HUD)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

System introduction

The head-up display (HUD) can project relevant information onto an effective visual area within the driver's field of view. By using this system, the driver can check the vehicle information during normal driving without lowering head, thereby avoiding distracting the driver's attention on the road ahead. Also, the driver does not need to switch the angle of view while observing the road ahead and the nearby instrument, thus preventing eye fatigue.

NOTICE

- › Under certain special weather conditions (such as rain, snow and strong sunlight), the information displayed on HUD may be unclear or disturbed.
- › Certain sunglasses can affect information reading.

Instructions

After starting the vehicle, you can turn on or off the head-up display system (HUD) through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【In-car】** → **【HUD】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the HUD is turned on, you can conduct the following settings:

- › **【Mode settings】** : you can set the content displayed by the HUD projection.
- › **【HUD-Snow mode】** : you can enable this function to enhance the HUD projection effect when the vehicle is running in snow.
- › **【Use steering wheel to adjust HUD】** : you can adjust the position and brightness of the HUD projection through the steering wheel buttons.
- › **【Brightness】** : you can adjust the brightness of the HUD projection.
- › **【Height】** : you can adjust the position of the HUD projection.
- › **【Rotation adjustment】** : you can adjust the angle of the HUD projection.

CAUTION

It is not recommended to apply film to the front windscreen, as it will affect the projection of the HUD. If you feel that the HUD projection is blurred after applying the film, it is recommended to remove the film.

i NOTICE

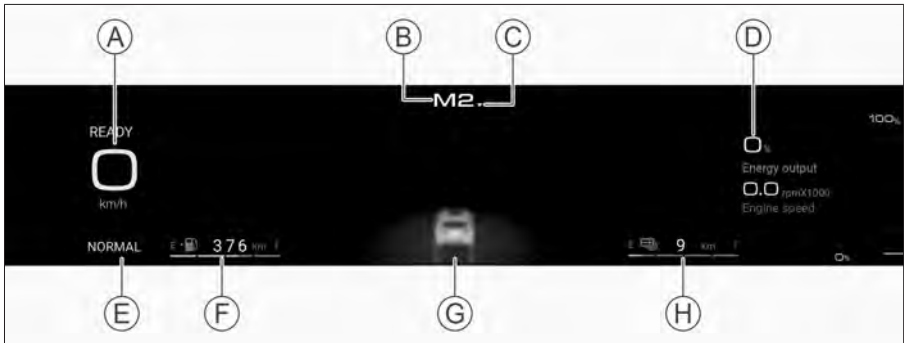
The HUD settings on the multimedia display may vary slightly depending on the model configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Instrument panel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all of standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Instrument overview



9657868E0210

- A** Speedometer
- B** Gear position display
- C** Shift gear notice
- D** Custom information
- E** Driving mode
- F** Fuel gauge
- G** Intelligent driving information
- H** Electric energy meter

i NOTICE

The data in the figure is only for effect display. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.


Fuel gauge

It displays the left oil and distance to empty.

i NOTICE

When driving for an extended time on a slope or around a curve, the fuel gauge may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.

CAUTION

- › The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- › When the warning light  on the combination instrument illuminates, you should duly refuel even if the instrument shows that the vehicle can travel farther.

Custom information

The information type displayed here can be set as needed.

Electric energy meter

It displays the approximate SOC and distance to empty for the power battery pack.

CAUTION

The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.

Shift gear notice

If the current vehicle speed does not match the gear engaged, the instrument will show the gear shifting icon to remind you to select proper gear.

- › ▲ Triangle up symbol: Prompt you to upshift.
- › ▼ Triangle down symbol: Prompt you to downshift.

Instrument panel

Instrument panel control


Control buttons


The instrument panel control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



660DC217763F

Hiding alarm messages



Press the back button  to hide the currently displayed primary alarm messages.

Press and hold the back button  to hide all primary alarm messages.



NOTICE



When there is an alarm message on the instrument panel interface, it needs to be hidden first. Otherwise, other control functions of the instrument panel cannot be used.

Viewing audio media information



Press the left  or right  button until the custom information interface switches to the audio media interface. And then, you can view the currently played music or radio station.



Viewing Bluetooth phone information

Press the left  or right  button until the custom information interface switches to the Bluetooth phone interface. On the Bluetooth phone interface, you can:

- › Press the up  or down  button to view the Bluetooth phone call log entries one by one.
- › Press the OK button to dial the currently selected call log entry.

Setting scenario mode



Press the left  or right  button until the custom information interface switches to the scenario mode interface.


On the scenario mode interface, press the up  or down  button to switch to the currently selected scenario mode, and press the OK button for confirmation and entering this mode.




NOTICE

Hide the incoming calls on the central control screen after you choose Private mode, and have the caller ID and recent calls displayed on the instrument panel screen, and have Bluetooth phone function controlled by buttons on the steering wheel.

Viewing driving data


Press the left  or right  button until the custom information interface switches to the driving data interface.

Press the homepage button  to return directly to the driving data interface. On the driving data interface, you can:

- › Press the homepage button  to directly return to the home page of the driving data interface.
- › Press the up  or down toggle  button to view the various driving data page by page.

including Energy output, Engine speed, After auto-start, After self-resetting, Tyre pressure monitoring, Coolant temp, Economic guidance and other information.

- › Press and hold the OK button to call up the secondary menu interface. On the secondary menu interface, you can view the alarm information, set the alarm speed and reset the stroke information.

Press the back button  to return to the previous interface.

Instrument panel indicator lights

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Instrument panel indicator lights

NOTICE

- › When the power supply mode is switched to ON, some indicator lights or warning lights will illuminate for a short time, indicating that the system self-test is in progress, which is normal.
- › Due to different vehicle configurations, not all the indicator lights or warning lights on the instrument panel will illuminate.



Primary warning indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle currently has primary warnings and that at least one primary warning is manually hidden.

WARNING

Do not ignore any warning. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may be caused.

NOTICE

You can check all current warnings of the vehicle on the warning interface of the instrument panel.



Left turn signal indicator light

When the left turn signal light is on, the left turn signal indicator light will flash.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

CAUTION

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Right turn signal indicator light

When the right turn signal light is on, the right turn signal indicator light will flash.

Instrument panel indicator lights

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

CAUTION

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Main light knob indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the main light knob is on.



Position light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the position lights and the license plate lights are on.



High beam indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the high beam headlights are on.



Auto high beam indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the high/low beam auto switching function is activated.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the high/low beam auto switching function is malfunctioning. In this case, manually turn on the high beam or low beam headlights as needed, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front fog light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front fog lights are on.



Rear fog light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear fog lights are on.



Unfastened seat belt warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the driver, the front passenger or the rear passenger doesn't fasten the seat belt.



Door open warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the door or the bonnet is open or not fully closed.



Airbag fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the airbag system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Tyre pressure monitoring system warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, accompanied by a sound prompt. At this time, stop the vehicle for inspections and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light flashes for a period of time and turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning, accompanied by several sound prompts.

WARNING

If this light turns on, it indicates that you should avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and drive and park the vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible for inspection.

Driving a vehicle when the tyre pressure is too low or the tyre temperature is too high will increase the possibility of tyre breakdown, and may even cause serious damage to the vehicle or lead to an accident.



Parking brake indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the parking brake is applied.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the brake disk temperature is too high or the pavement slope is too large. In this case, there is a risk of vehicle rolling. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle on a flat road as soon as possible.



Parking brake fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic parking brake is malfunctioning.



Auto vehicle hold indicator light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in working status.



Anti-lock braking system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the anti-lock braking system is malfunctioning. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle can still be braked normally although the anti-lock function is not available.



Brake system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low, the braking force distribution system is malfunctioning, or the electronic brake booster system is invalid.

In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre. Otherwise, a serious accident may be caused.



Electronic stability control system warning light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is working.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.



Electronic stability control off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is deactivated.



Hill descent control indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the hill descent control system is activated and ready for use.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the hill descent control system is working.



Electric power steering system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power steering effect is reduced, so more force is required to operate the steering wheel. If this light remains on after the vehicle is restarted or after a short running distance, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system is malfunctioning, and the assisted power no longer exists. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot and turn off the vehicle, and then restart the vehicle several minutes later. If the light remains on, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Instrument panel indicator lights

WARNING

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system will stop working. At this time, you need stronger power to operate the steering wheel to make steering function work. Go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle when the remaining fuel level is extremely low. Otherwise, the emission control system and power system may be damaged due to running out of the fuel.

2

Driving



High engine water temperature warning light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the water temperature of the engine cooling system is excessively high. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection and repair. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.



Engine system fault warning light

If the light turns on after the engine is started, it indicates that the engine has a fault that affects emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Low fuel level warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the fuel is insufficient.

On slopes or during turning, the light may go on prematurely due to unstable fuel levels inside the fuel tank.

i NOTICE

- › Failure of some of the vehicle's control systems (such as loss of communication signals in the hybrid system or charging system) may also cause this warning light to illuminate. If this warning light goes on, stop at a safe spot as soon as possible, switch the power supply to OFF mode, then restart the vehicle and check this warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible. Please drive carefully and avoid high speeds before the malfunction is identified.

If this indicator light turns on frequently, it is also recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection even if the light is off after following the above steps.

- › The fuel tank cap not being properly installed may also cause this light to illuminate.



Engine maintenance warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine has a fault not related to emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Low oil pressure warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the oil is insufficient. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and shut down the engine. Otherwise, the engine parts may be seriously damaged. Check the oil level after a few minutes and add oil if necessary. If the oil level is normal and the light is still on, contact the authorised service centre.



Battery charging system warning light

If this light turns on after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the battery charging system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Transmission overheat warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and turn off the engine to allow the transmission to cool down.

If the light stays on after the above treatments, contact the authorised service centre.



Adaptive cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and in standby status.

When this light is on and green, the adaptive cruise control function is activated, and the cruising speed is successfully set.

NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.



Smart cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the smart cruise control function is activated and in standby status.



Side and rear assist system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the sensor of the side and rear assist system is blocked. In this case, check whether there are objects covering the inner/outer surface of both sides of the rear bumper. If any, remove them right away.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the side and rear assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the rear side assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Blind spot monitoring function

If this light turns on, it indicates that the blind spot monitoring function is activated.



Rear cross traffic alert indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear cross traffic alert function is activated.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Lane assist system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the lane assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the functions of the lane assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Emergency lane keeping off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the emergency lane keeping function is deactivated.



Forward collision warning fault warning light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto emergency braking function is activated and working properly.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto emergency braking function is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Forward collision warning off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the auto emergency braking function is deactivated.



Traffic sign recognition indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the traffic sign recognition function is activated, but the system has not recognised the speed limit information.

i NOTICE

After the system recognises the speed limit information, the corresponding speed limit value will be displayed in the middle of the indicator light.



Traffic sign recognition fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the traffic sign recognition function is restricted or malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Traffic sign recognition off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the traffic sign recognition function is deactivated.



READY indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is started and ready for normal driving.

Instrument panel indicator lights



EV indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is in battery electric driving, and the engine is not running at this time.



Sound prompt system indicator light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the sound prompt system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Charging status indicator light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the charging cable is connected but the charging has not started.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the traction battery is in the charging status.



Charging system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that a minor fault (recoverable or not safety-related) occurs in the charging system.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that a serious fault (unrecoverable or safety-related) occurs in the charging system.



Power reduction indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle has a fault that affects the power output of the whole vehicle. In this case, the vehicle power is reduced and the vehicle speed is restricted.



Low traction battery power indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the traction battery power is too low, and the battery must be charged soon.



Traction battery fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the traction battery has a minor fault.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the traction battery has a serious fault, and the power system will be powered off urgently.



Power system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle is malfunctioning. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle has a serious fault, and the vehicle cannot continue driving. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

RBS

Brake energy recovery fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake energy recovery function is malfunctioning.

Power management system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

System description

The power management system can monitor the power consumption of each electrical equipment in the vehicle and allocate the power reasonably to improve the starting performance of the vehicle and extend the service life of the battery.

The power management system mainly has the following functions:

› **Battery monitoring**

The system will continuously monitor the voltage, current and temperature of the battery through sensors, and calculate the current SOC (State Of Charge) and health status of the battery according to the monitoring results.

› **Sleep power management**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the parking period of the vehicle, and gradually shut down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Smart DC charging**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the long-term parking of the vehicle, and automatically control the traction battery to charge the battery to ensure the starting performance of the vehicle if it detects the undervoltage battery.

› **Static power management**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment when the vehicle is not started, and gradually shut down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

› Dynamic power management

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of each electrical equipment during the driving of the vehicle, and distribute the power generated by the traction battery to different electrical equipment as needed. When the traction battery outputs more power than the demand of the electrical equipment, the dynamic power supply management system will make adjustments and supply power to the battery to allow it to reach the optimum charging status.

i NOTICE

It is impossible for a power management system to go beyond the boundaries of physical laws. Please note that there are limits to the power and service life of the battery.

Information you should know

The power management system will give top priority to ensuring the starting performance of the vehicle.

In the event of short-distance travelling, and driving in urban areas and under low temperatures, the power consumption will increase, and the traction battery will supply limited power.

If the vehicle is not started, the use of electrical equipment will directly consume the power of the battery because the traction battery cannot supplement power for the battery in this case.

In these situations, you can feel that the power management system will operate to control the power distribution.

Parking the vehicle for a long time

If the vehicle is not driven for several days or weeks, when the power management system detects that the battery is too low, it will control the traction battery to charge the battery. If the battery cannot be charged due to the low power of the traction battery, the power management system will gradually turn off the electrical equipment or reduce the electrical energy being used by the electrical equipment, so as to reduce the power consumption and maintain the vehicle starting performance for a longer time.

If the vehicle has been parked for a long time, certain convenient functions (such as remote unlocking, mobile APP control function, etc.) may not be available. After starting the vehicle, these functions will be restored.

When the vehicle is not started

If you listen to the radio or use other functions of the audiovisual system without starting the vehicle, the battery will discharge the power.

Power management system

If the battery power is consumed in such a manner that vehicle starting is affected, a message will be displayed on the multimedia display screen or the instrument cluster. At this point, if you want to continue using these functions, you will need to start the vehicle.

3

Audiovisual system

Safety prompt	210
Panel introduction.....	212
Display screen introduction	215
Function introduction	218

Safety prompt

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tips for safety

- › Ensure that your use of any of the system's features does not distract you and thereby interfere with safe driving. Your most important responsibility while driving is for the safety of the drive. You must obey all traffic regulations.
- › During driving, the driver is not allowed to operate the system and must keep the volume of the system at an appropriate level, so as not to affect driving safety due to lack of concentration.
- › This system may only be used in areas permitted by law. Some national or local regulations may prohibit use of the display screen within the driver's field of view.
- › Do not disassemble or modify the system.

- › When a failure occurs, stop using the system and contact authorised service centre. Do not try to repair the system by yourself.

About the use

- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the buttons or knobs on the panel firmly.
- › Do not press the screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs in process of operation.

About the radio

When driving the car, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

About USB storage devices

Since there are various types of USB storage devices, this system may not be compatible with all USB storage devices.

About Bluetooth

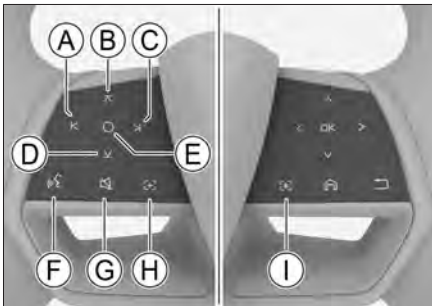
- › Since there are a great number of smartphone brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all the smartphones.
- › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on the smartphone and search it again.
- › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the smartphone, and pair it again.
- › If Bluetooth does not function properly when in use, disconnect the Bluetooth and reconnect it.

Panel introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Steering wheel buttons



- A Left button
- B Up button
- C Right button
- D Down button
- E Play/pause button
- F Voice button
- G Mute button
- H Custom button
- I Custom button

The steering wheel multimedia buttons are for the basic controls in the default option, as well as for the vehicle controls in special options and call options, increasing the scalability.

The priority from high to low is: Call Option > Special Option > Default Option.

Call option

When there is an incoming call, press the left button **⏪** to answer the call. Press the right button **⏩** to hang up.

Special option









In special options, there will be operation prompts related to the steering wheel buttons on the relevant interface. Please operate according to the prompts.

Default option



The basic functions of the steering wheel buttons are as follows:

› For playing multimedia: press the left button **⏪** or right button **⏩** to switch to the previous/next track, and press and hold the button for fast rewinding/fast forwarding.

For listening to a local radio station: press the left button **⏪** or right button **⏩** to search for the previous/next valid radio station, and press and hold the button to switch to the previous/next favourite radio station.

- › Press the up button  or down button  to increase/decrease the volume. Press and hold the button to continuously increase/decrease the volume.
- › Press the play/pause button  to play/pause the multimedia.
- › Press the voice button  to turn the voice recognition system on or off.
- › Press the mute button  to enable or disable multimedia mute. Press and hold the mute button  to enable or disable navigation mute.
- › Press the custom button  to execute the set function. Press and hold this button to enter the button function settings interface, and you can set up the custom function of this button.
- › Press the custom button  to execute the set function. Press and hold this button to enter the button function settings interface, and you can set up the custom function of this button.

Restarting the system

Press and hold the left down button  and the right down button  at the same time for about 10 seconds to restart the system.

NOTICE

- › The audiovisual system and instrument cluster will restart at the same time.

- › To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment, shift to P gear, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is static.

Power supply button



C29592326A4C

- › Press the button to enter the mute mode. Press this button again to exit from the mute mode. Press and hold the button for about 2 seconds to enter the screen off mode. Press and hold the button again or touch any position on the screen to exit from the screen off mode. Press and hold the button for about 10 seconds to restart the system.

NOTICE

- › The audiovisual system and instrument will restart at the same time.

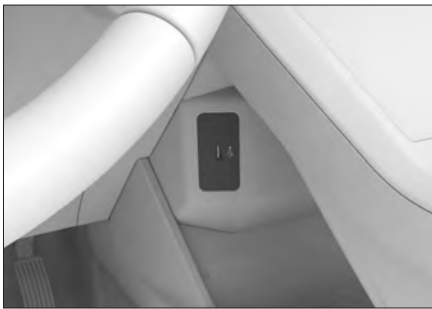
Panel introduction

- › To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment, shift to gear P, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.
- › Turn the knob to adjust the volume.

External devices

USB interface

The USB interface is located in the hollowed-out place of the auxiliary instrument panel, as shown in the figure.



5D6A448FABA0

i NOTICE

- › Ensure a stable connection between the external device and the input port.
- › Do not plug or unplug the device during playback to avoid problems like the system failure to recognize the device normally.

Media specifications

This system supports the following media specifications:

Media	Specifications
USB	USB devices with partition format FAT32, NTFS
Bluetooth	Support Bluetooth 5.1 protocol, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) mode, and protocols: AVDTP, A2DP, AVCTP, AVRCP, HFP, MAP, PBAP, BIP, SPP.

File format

This system supports the following file formats:

File	Format
Audio	ACC, AMR, FLAC, MP3, OGG, WAV, WMA, AC3, APE, M4A, AIF
Video	3GP, ASF, AVI, FLV, M4V, MKV, MOV, MP4, MPG, VOB, WMV, RM, RMVB, F4V

i NOTICE

Even files in formats supported by this system may not be normally played due to file characteristics (such as file quality, bit rate, frame rate, resolution, compression quality, or corruption), playing environment and storage devices.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

About multimedia display screen



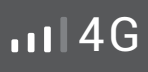








CAUTION

- › Some national or local regulations may prohibit operating the display screen while driving. Please comply with local regulations.
- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the display screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs during operation.











Display screen introduction

Central display screen status bar

The status bar icons are displayed at the top of the central display screen to display each function status. The status bar icons will change in real time according to functional characteristics, signal intensity, connection status, switch status, etc.

Icon	Function status
	Time display
	Temperature display
	Network signal, varying with the network status
	WLAN connected, showing signal strength
	New message notice
	Mute mode on
	Sound mode on
	Bluetooth not connected
	Bluetooth connected
	USB device connected
	If the icon is displayed in grey, it indicates that the wireless charging is in standby. If the icon is displayed in green, it indicates that the wireless charging is working.

Display screen introduction

Icon	Function status
	Wireless charging completed
	Steering wheel heating on
	Front left seat heating on
	Front right seat heating on
	Front left seat ventilation on
	Front right seat ventilation on
	A/C airflow distribution mode, varying with the state of the A/C
	System upgrade package download in progress
	System upgrade package download completed
	System upgrade package download failed

Function introduction


Vehicle equipment


Please note that this manual contains all of standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Shortcut panel

For most interfaces, sliding down from the top of the screen can call up the shortcut panel.

Brightness and volume

Navigation volume: Touch and drag the slider to adjust the navigation volume; touch the mute button  to turn on or off the navigation mute.

Media volume: Touch and drag the slider to adjust the media volume; touch the mute button  to turn on or off the media mute.

Screen brightness: Touch and drag the slider to adjust the screen brightness.

Shortcut switch


The shortcut switch is displayed on the right side. Touch the switch to shift to or turn on/off the corresponding function; keep touching the switch to shift to the corresponding setting interface.


Touch the **【Edit】** button to switch to the edit interface, and you can change the shortcut switch icon below.


Permanent menu bar

For convenience, a permanent menu bar is displayed on the left side of most interfaces.


› Touch the home button  to switch to the home page interface.

The system uses dual home pages. After switching to the home page interface, touch the home button  again to switch between the driving scenario home page and the entertainment scenario home page.

› Touch the menu button  to enter into or exit from the menu interface.

› Touch the 360 button  to enter the 360 AVM interface.

› Touch the sound button  to adjust the volume.


- › If mobile phone interaction is not connected, touch the mobile phone interaction button  to enter the connection interface of the system setting.

If the mobile phone interaction is connected, the corresponding mobile phone interaction icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding mobile phone interaction interface.

NOTICE

Due to different model configurations or system versions, the icons and functions in the permanent menu bar may vary. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Entertainment scenario

Tap the home button  on the left permanent menu bar to switch to the entertainment scenario home interface.

- › **【Online Multimedia】** : Including applications related to online music, online radio and online news. The applications are constantly being updated. Refer to the actual vehicle for the displayed contents and functions.

- › **【Local Media】** : Including local radio, Bluetooth music, USB music and USB video. To play Bluetooth music, first go to the **【System Settings】** → **【Bluetooth】** interface to connect other audio devices by pairing.

To play USB music and USB video, the USB storage device used to store the media files must first be plugged into the USB port on the vehicle (located on the left side of the auxiliary instrument panel).


NOTICE

- › To use the functional services of the entertainment scenario, you need to login and bind the relevant account. Follow the interface prompts for login and binding.
- › If you wish to play paid content or purchase the membership, relevant fees will be incurred. Make a purchase on a voluntary basis according to the need.
There may be a delay after purchasing a membership due to network signal etc. If you have not obtained your benefits after a few minutes, restart your system.
- › Network traffic will be consumed when you use online audio, video and other services that require Internet access.

Function introduction

Driving scenario

Map interface

Tap the home button  on the left permanent menu bar to switch to the driving scenario home interface.



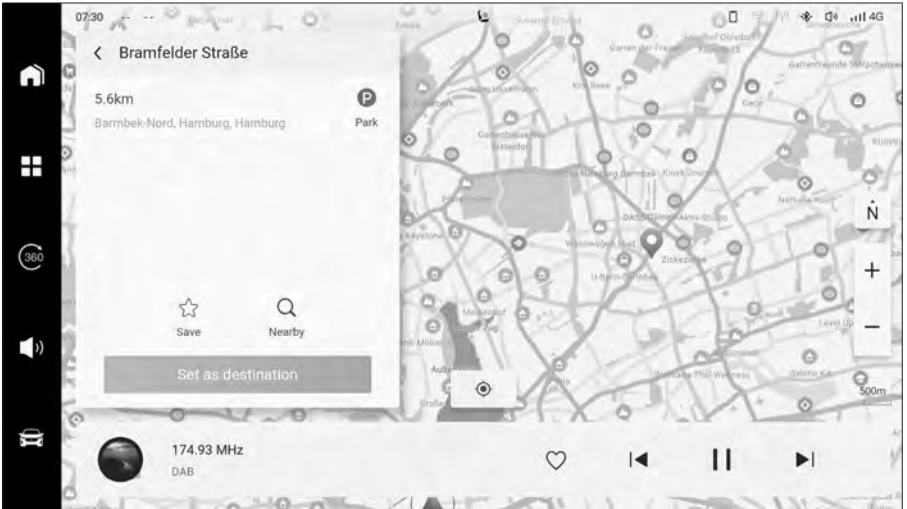
3757088A69E5

- (A) Destination search
- (B) Parking lot search
- (C) Navigation settings
- (D) Navigation mute
- (E) Vehicle position
- (F) Map perspective
- (G) Map zooming
- (H) Map measuring scale

Some function buttons will be automatically hidden if they are not operated for a period of time. Touch the non-button location on the map to call up the hidden function buttons.

Choosing destination on map

Touch the location for a long time on the map to switch to the location details interface.

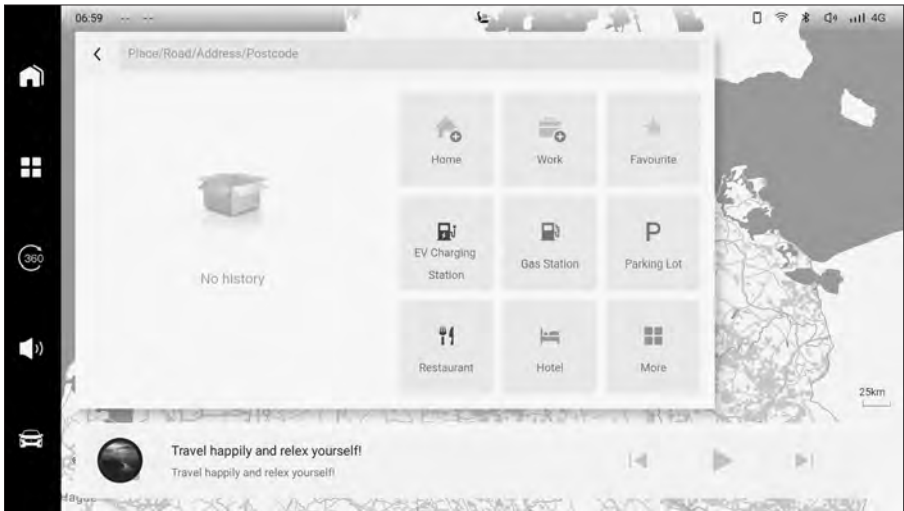


- › Tap < back button to return to the previous interface.
- › Tap ☆ favourite button to favourite current location. Tap this button again to cancel favourite.
- › Tap 🔍 surrounding search button to search surroundings.
- › Tap **【Set as destination】** button to set the current location as the destination.

Destination search

Tap the 🔍 search button in the map interface to switch to the destination search interface.

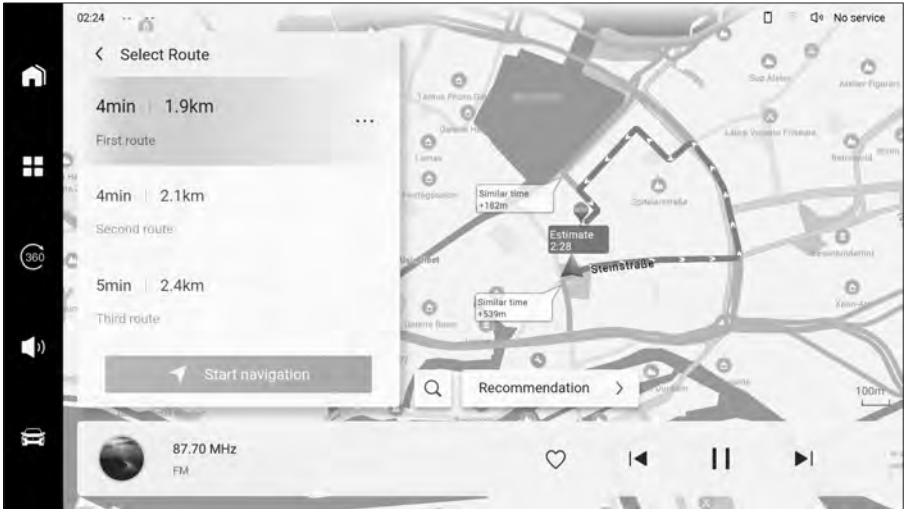
Function introduction



- › Tap **【Home】** button to set home address. After setting the home address, tap this button to set the location of home as the destination.
- › Tap the **【Work】** button to set company address. After setting the company address, tap this button to set the location of company as the destination.
- › Tap **【Favourites】** button to switch to the Favourites interface and the favourite location can be displayed. You can check, delete the a favourite position and set it as destination.

Route planning

You can switch to route planning interface if you have set the destination through various methods.



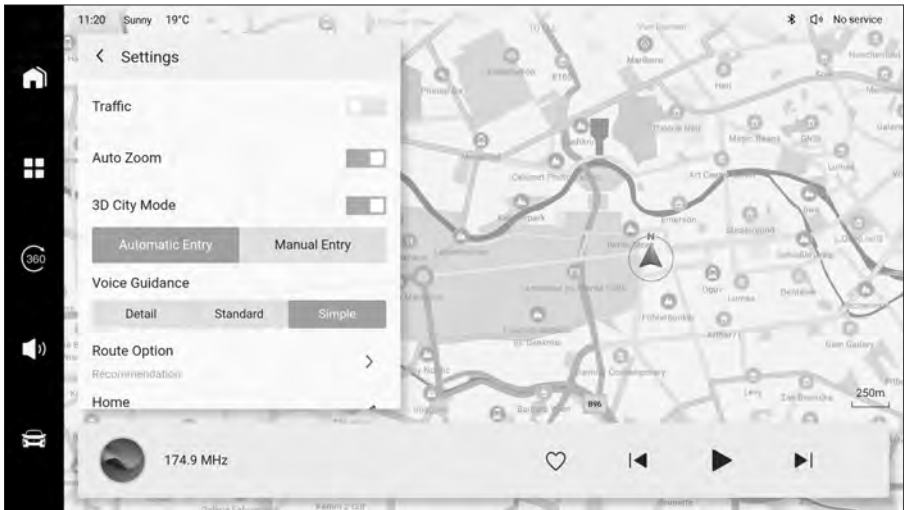
8C166050E1A6

- › Tap < back button to return to the previous interface.
- › Tap 🔍 search button to switch to destination search interface to add ways or change destination.
- › Tap **【Recommendation】** button to display the menu of favourite routes and switch between favourite routes.
- › Tap **【Start navigation】** button to switch to interface of route guidance and enter into the navigation mode.

Navigation settings

On the map interface, tap the setting button ⚙️ to switch to the navigation settings interface.

Function introduction




367C1B768D08

You can set current road conditions, automatically proportional scale, 3D map , navigation broadcasting, favourite route, home/company address, delete personal information, conduct online map updates and USB map updates and check version details.

About navigation

- › It is recommended not to operate this navigation while driving the vehicle. Please operate under the premise of ensuring safety after parking to prevent traffic accidents or other dangerous situations.
- › The functions and service provided by the navigation, including location search, route planning, travel navigation and traffic conditions, are for reference only. Please do not take them as the only reference for driving or travelling. Please refer to the actual traffic and road conditions, and strictly abide by traffic laws and traffic rules.
- › Using services that require Internet access, such as online navigation, traffic conditions and data downloads, consumes network traffic.
- › Some online functions and services will not be available when the vehicle is not connected to the Internet and only uses offline navigation (e.g. real-time road conditions and traffic restriction alerts).

Menu interface

Touch the menu button  on the resident menu bar on the left to enter or exit the menu interface.

The small windows of recently used applications are displayed on the top. Touch the small application windows to quickly switch to the application interface.

The application icons are displayed at the bottom. Touch the application icons to switch to application interface.

NOTICE

- › Some applications require Internet access which consumes network traffic.
- › The interfaces of some applications may change with the update of content and the upgrade of version. The details refers to the actual vehicle.
- › As the system version is upgraded, the applications displayed on the menu interface may increase or decrease.
- › Buying VIP, looking or download selling content, buying relating services or products and so on need pay relating fees. Please voluntarily to buy according to need.
- › Some applications are third-party applications which products and services are provided and responsible by the third-party.

Mobile phone interaction

Function introduction

The mobile phone interaction function can project some mobile applications to the on-board multimedia display screen for display and control, mainly including navigation, music, phone, etc., allowing you to enjoy a safer and more convenient driving experience.

NOTICE

- › Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some iPhones may not support the Apple CarPlay function.
- › If the Android Auto app is not installed on your Android phone, download the latest app from the Google Play App Store and install it. Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some Android phones may not support the Android Auto function.

Function introduction

- › After activating the mobile phone interaction function, the Bluetooth phone function of the vehicle is disabled. At this point, you can use the telephone function of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Wired connection

Connect the mobile phone to the on-board USB interface through a data cable, and then touch the **【Apple CarPlay】** or **【Android Auto】** button on the menu interface to enter the mobile phone interaction interface.


Disconnect the USB cable to exit the mobile phone interaction.

- › **【Apple CarPlay】** : for iPhones.
- › **【Android Auto】** : for Android mobile phones.



Wireless connection

NOTICE

When using wireless connection, please ensure that your phone Bluetooth and WLAN are turned on.

1. If the mobile phone interaction is not connected, touch the mobile phone interaction button  on the multimedia display sidebar to enter the connection interface.
2. Turn on the vehicle's Bluetooth, establish a connection with the phone's Bluetooth, and then follow the prompts to complete the connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Quick entry

- › If an Apple CarPlay is connected, the Apple CarPlay button  is displayed on the multimedia display sidebar. Touch this button to enter the Apple CarPlay interface.
- › If Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto button  is displayed on the multimedia display sidebar. Touch this button to enter the Android Auto interface.

System settings

Touch the **【System settings】** button on the menu interface to switch to the system settings interface.

Connection settings

- › **【Bluetooth】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off the Bluetooth.

- › **【Bluetooth visibility】** : when this switch is activated, other devices are allowed to detect the Bluetooth of this system and perform pairing connection.
- › **【Device name】** : it displays the name of the Bluetooth device, which can be modified to a custom name.
- › **【Connection history】** : it displays the currently connected Bluetooth devices, and you can disconnect or delete the connected devices.
- › **【Available devices】** : it displays a list of found Bluetooth devices. Touch the device name in the list to initiate a pairing request for pairing connection. Touch the **【Search】** button to search for Bluetooth devices again.

Hotspot settings

- › **【Vehicle hotspot】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off a hotspot.

NOTICE

The hotspot of this vehicle only supports the realization of mobile phone interaction function, and cannot provide mobile Internet service.

- › **【Device name】** : you can view or set the name of the vehicle hotspot.
- › **【Password】** : you can view or set the access password for the vehicle hotspot.
- › **【Connected devices】** : it displays a list of devices connected to the vehicle's hotspot.

WLAN settings

- › **【WLAN】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off the WLAN.
- › **【Available networks】** : it displays available networks you search for, and you can touch the network name in the list for connection.

Audio settings

- › **【System sound】** : you can adjust the navigation volume, speech volume, media volume, call volume, and ringer volume; you can turn on or off the self-adaptive startup volume, lowers multimedia volume while using navigation guidance, caller ID announcement, and system sound effects; you can set the vehicle warning sounds, and speed sensitive volume control.
- › **【Sound effects】** : you can set the location for best sound, pedestrian warning sound, turn on or off the stereo surround sound, active noise reduction, and adjust the equalizer.

Function introduction

CAUTION

The active noise reduction function does not work until the doors, windows and sunroof are fully closed.

If the functions of windows or sunroof are abnormal due to battery power failure or other reasons, you need to initialize it; otherwise, the active noise reduction function will not work normally.

- › **【Voice assistant】** : you can view the default wake-up words for the voice assistant, and set custom wake-up words.



Display settings

- › **【Dashboard brightness control】** : you can adjust the instrument brightness.
- › **【Center console display brightness control】** : you can adjust the multimedia display screen brightness.
- › **【Backlight brightness adjustment】** : you can adjust the backlight brightness.
- › **【Display mode】** : you can select the display mode of the interface as auto (when the light is turned on manually or set to auto mode, the switching between display modes can be triggered by the light intensity), night or day.
- › **【Auto set time】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off the time auto-update function.

When this function is turned off, you can manually set the time, date, and time zone.

- › **【Time format】** : you can select the system time display as 12-hour or 24-hour format.
- › **【Language】** : you can set the interface language.
- › **【Unit】** : you can set the unit for length and speed.
- › **【Tyre pressure unit】** : you can set the unit for tyre pressure.

Individual settings

- › **【Dashboard display】** : you can set the instrument panel display mode.
- › **【Steering wheel [+] customization】** : you can select the custom function of the button  on the steering wheel.
- › **【Steering wheel [*] customization】** : you can select the custom function of the button  on the steering wheel.

System information

- › **【Version info】** : you can view and change the device name, and view the software version and system update.
- › **【Privacy security】** : you can set the permissions related to personal information data access.
- › **【Reset and recover】** : you can reset the system to recover all system settings.

i NOTICE

About upgrades:

- › To ensure safety during the upgrading process, place the vehicle in a safe environment.
- › To ensure the smooth progress of the upgrade, keep the power supply in ON mode, set the shift lever at P gear position, apply the parking brake, keep the vehicle in stationary status and shut down high, power electrical appliances (such as A/C, lights, speakers and so on).
- › Please read the license agreement on the download interface and the notices on the installation interface during upgrading process. If you want to know the specific content of this upgrade, you can click the update details to view.
- › During the upgrade process, all functions of the vehicle will be invalid, including following situations: the vehicle cannot be started; the A/C cannot be used; the door cannot be opened and closed; the audio-visual entertainment function becomes invalid; all the fault lights on the instrument cluster will light up; the active and passive safety functions become invalid. However, after the upgrade is completed, all functions will be restored.
- › Do not change the vehicle state during installation process (do not employ force to start the vehicle, and do not employ force to shut down the system).
- › When upgrading via WIFI, please keep the network signal in good condition, and do not disconnect the current network during the upgrading process.
- › It is normal if the screen becomes black or restarts during the process of upgrading the host or screen. You can wait for a few minutes and the host will finish restarting, and then the installation result will pop up. Do not change the vehicle state during this period.

Function introduction

- › When the upgrade is completed, ensure that this upgrade has been successful before closing doors and locking the vehicle. If the upgrade is failed or there are abnormal conditions during upgrade progress, contact the service provider.
- › After the successful upgrade, the various updated system items, functions, interface, operating methods, etc. may change, which is not as described in the manual. The updated information will be included in the interface reminder during the upgrading progress.

Power assistant

Touch the **【Power Assistant】** button on the menu interface to switch to the energy consumption assistant interface.

- › **【Power Flow】** : display the energy transmission status and total cruising range of the vehicle.
- › **【Energy Consumption Trend】** : display the energy consumption trend of the vehicle within a section.
- › **【Charging Management】** : set the charging mode and the power battery SOC limit.
- › **【Driving Tips】** : check the advices on economical driving and vehicle maintenance.


My account

On the menu interface, touch the **【My account】** button to switch to the personal setting interface.

- › Touch the **【Switch account】** button to switch to other accounts for login.
- › Touch the **【Login now】** button to log in by scanning the QR code through email verification code, account password, or mobile app.
- › After logging in, touch the **【Account and security】** button to view the account information, modify the login password, and set the facial recognition function. After activating the facial recognition function and recording the facial information, the driver can log in for facial recognition according to the prompts every time they enter the vehicle and close the door.
- › After logging in, touch the **【About】** button to check information related to user terms and privacy policies.

Mobile service





Touch the **【Mobile service】** button on the menu interface to switch to the mobile service interface. If Bluetooth is not connected, go to **【System settings】** → **【Connection】** interface to turn on Bluetooth for pairing.

- › After inputting the telephone number, touch the dial button  to make a call.
- › Touch the **【Contacts】** button to display the contacts list after synchronising. Touch a contact or phone number in the list to make the call.
- › Touch the **【Recent calls】** button to display the recent calls after synchronising. Touch any contact record in the list to make a call.
- › Touch the **【Messages】** button to display the message interface after synchronising. Touch it to check the message of the current connected device.

NOTICE

To use the functions of contacts and recent calls, authorization is required on the paired mobile. Generally, in the process of pairing, a grant permission will be displayed on the mobile phone.

After the call is established, switch to the call interface.

- › Touch the hang up button  to end the call.
- › Touch the microphone button  to turn off or on the on-board microphone.
- › Touch the private/hands-free button  to switch to the private mode or the hands-free mode.
Private mode: calling through the mobile connected to the Bluetooth of the system.
Hands-free mode: calling through the on-board speaker and microphone.
- › Touching the pad button  can enable or disable the dial pad.

WARNING

The driver must always concentrate on driving the vehicle and must not be distracted by calls to avoid accidents.

- › Use a Bluetooth phone only when road, traffic and weather conditions permit.
- › The volume should be adjusted so that signals outside the vehicle like those coming from police cars or fire trucks can be heard at all times.
- › Calls may not be made in areas with no or weak network signal, and in tunnels or garages.

Function introduction

- › When the driver needs to operate the mobile, the driver should first park the vehicle temporarily in a safe place.



E-Manual

Touch the **【E-manual】** button on the menu interface to switch to the E-Manual interface.

Skill tree

Touch the **【Skill Tree】** button on the menu interface to switch to the Skill Tree interface.


The Skill Tree interface displays and introduces the functional classification and expansion relationship of the audio-visual system in a tree structure.

- › The Skill Tree center displays the Bluetooth name of the vehicle, and the Bluetooth name can be modified via the Skill Tree center interface.
- › Touch the button on the Skill Tree to expand the lower-level functions and pop up the details of the current function; keep touching the button on the Skill Tree to close all function buttons under the branch.
- › Touch the “back to center” button , the interface display returns to the default zoom ratio, and quickly returns to the Skill Tree center view.
- › Touch the search button  to search for functions in the Skill Tree.
- › Touch the **【Auto-Learn】** button to turn on or off the Auto-learn function. After this function is turned on, the functions configured after the scene engine can be automatically added to the Skill Tree.

Voice assistant

Voice assistant can recognize and execute voice commands to control vehicle functions quickly and improve operation convenience.

You can start the voice assistant in the following ways:

- › Press the voice button  on the steering wheel.
- › Voice wake-up: via the system default wake-up words or custom wake-up words.

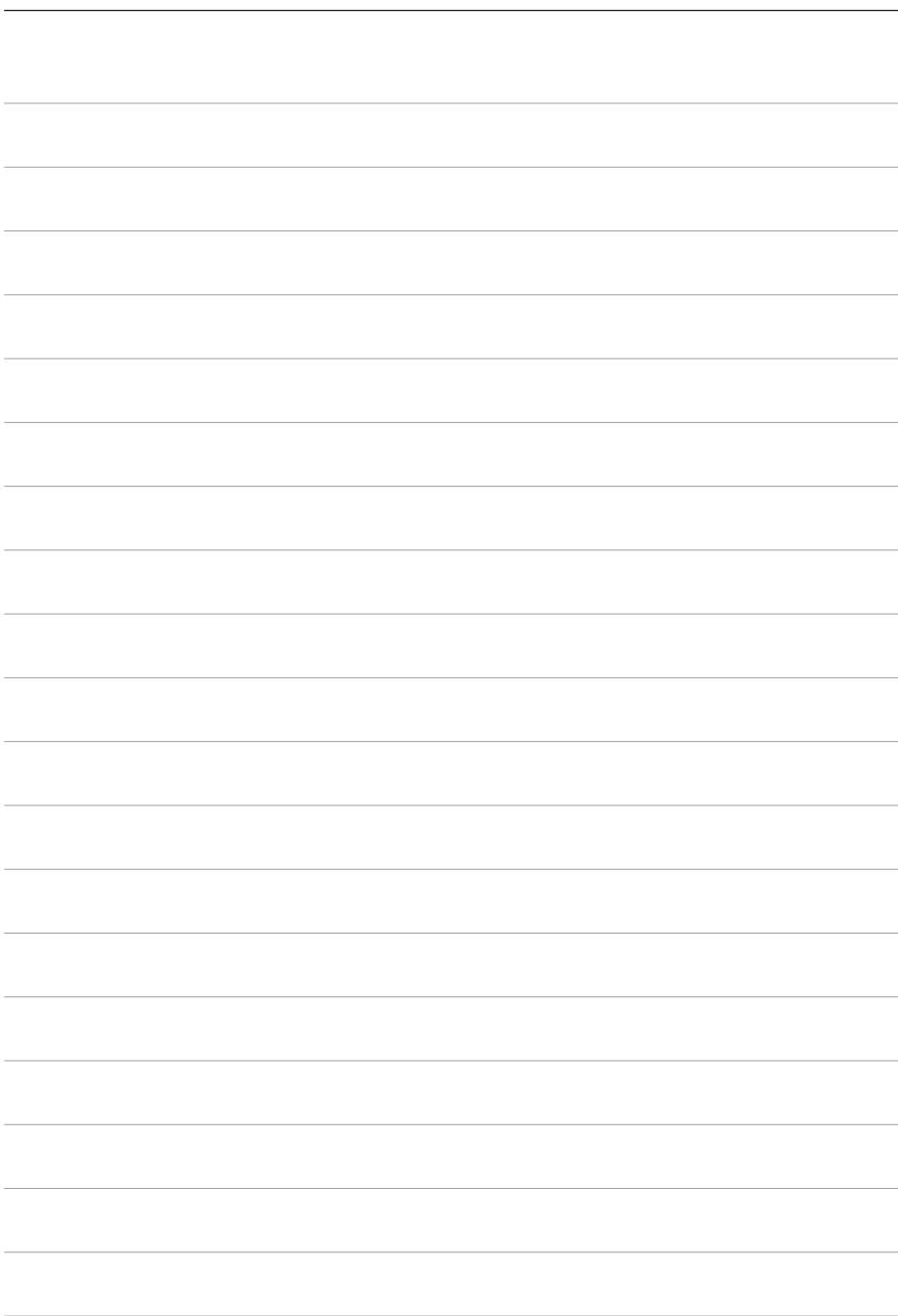
For examples of wake-up words and voice commands, you can go to **【System settings】** → **【Sound】** → **【Voice settings】** interface to view or set them.

WARNING

When you control the vehicle functions using the voice assistant, pay attention to the surroundings and personal safety to avoid pinch, collisions and other severe accidents.

NOTICE

- › The success rate of voice recognition will be affected by environmental noise, network signal, usage habits, pronunciation and other factors. The specific use effect is subject to the actual vehicle environment.
- › Some functions of voice assistant require Internet access.



4

Safety

Seat belts	236
Airbags	240
Child restraint system.....	249
Vehicle anti-theft system.....	257
VMDR biometric identification	259
Emergency shut-off system	261
Event data recorder	262
Information security.....	264

Seat belts

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tips for safety

- › The shoulder belt must not hang on the neck area, or pass under the arm-pit area.
- › The lap belt must be as low as possible across the hip.
- › Each seat belt can only be used by one person. More than one person (including children) must not share the same seat belt.

If more than two people wear the same seat belt, when the vehicle is involved in a collision, not only the seat belt can not disperse the impact, but there is a danger of two people colliding with each other.

- › The seat belt shall not be twisted or slack.
- › Do not wrap the seat belt around objects with sharp corners, or it may be damaged during an accident.

- › Never use a seat belt that has undergone strong impact from an accident or which is otherwise damaged.
- › Do not remove, disassemble or alter seat belts.
- › Do not use a seat belt with foreign object in the buckle.
- › We suggest that when you use the seat belt, you shall keep your seat belt clean. oil and water-based materials such as soil, oil stain, water, beverage, food residue, shall not be attached to the seat belt so as to ensure that it can be pulled out and retracted smoothly.
- › Do not use organic substances, such as benzene or gasoline, to clean the seat belts, and do not bleach or dye them.
- › Children must not play with the seat belt.

If a child accidentally wraps the seat belt around his or her neck while playing with the seat belt, he/she may not be able to pull the seat belt, resulting in serious injury or even death. In this case, if the locking tab of seat belt cannot be released, use a pair of scissors to cut the seat belt.

- › The seat belts in the vehicle are mainly designed based on adult size. So it is recommended that children use proper child restraint systems.

If the belt is in contact with the child's neck or jaw or slack to the hip when the seat belt is being used correctly, a proper child seat shall be used.

If a child is old enough to use the seat belt, he/she shall wear the belt properly.

› Precautions for pregnant women

You can get effective advice by consulting your doctor. The method of wearing a seat belt for pregnant women is basically the same as the normal use of seat belts. However, note that the lap belt shall be as low as possible across the hip and that the shoulder belt shall pass through the middle of the shoulder and prevent the belt touching the bulging belly.

Failure to properly fasten seat belts can result in serious injury to the pregnant women and the fetuses, or even death, in the event of emergency braking or collision.

- › Passengers who are sick or disabled shall follow the doctor's advice and wear seat belts correctly.
- › When the seat belt is not in use, it should be fully retracted. Do not twist or jam the seat belt, and do not allow the seat belt to touch any sharp objects. The seat belt buckle cannot be blocked by foreign objects. Otherwise, correct engagement of the seat belt locking tab and the buckle will be affected.

Wear the seat belt properly

- › Adjust the seat back so that you can sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- › The seat belt shall be neat.
- › The shoulder belt should be close to the middle of the shoulder and not on the neck and not on the shoulder.
- › The lap belt should be, as much as possible, fastened around the lower part of the hip bone.

WARNING

- › During the drive, all passengers must fasten their seat belts properly. Failure to do so can lead to severe injury or even death from collisions or emergency braking as passengers' bodies are not sufficiently bound to seats.
- › It is recommended that all passengers in the vehicle fasten their seat belts at any time even for a short drive. Otherwise, the risk of injury or death will increase if an accident occurs.

Pretensioner seat belts

When a collision occurs, the pretensioner can instantly tighten the seat belt, so that the passengers are best restrained and protected.

Seat belts

The force limiter maintains seat belt load at an acceptable level and reduce force exerted on the passenger's chest.

Operating conditions

The pretensioner seat belt works when the vehicle receives a significant impact from the front.

It may not work when the following mild collisions occur:

- › Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h;
- › Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h;

The pretensioner seat belt may not fully function when the vehicle is subjected to the following severe collision.

- › The vehicle flips over by 90° or 180°.
- › The collision comes from the side or rear of the vehicle.

i NOTICE

Your vehicle may only be equipped with pretensioner seat belts for some seats. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

! WARNING

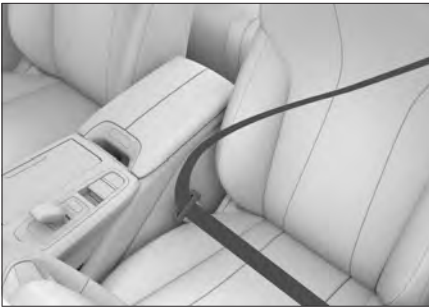
- › When using the pretensioner seat belt, wear it correctly and adjust the seat to the optimal seating position. Failure to do so will reduce the seat belt performance, leading to severe injury or even death.
- › If you want to install, remove or dismantle the pretensioner seat belt, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. If the pretensioner seat belt is not used correctly, it will not work properly and may cause severe injury or even death in an accident.
- › The pretensioner seat belt cannot be used repeatedly.

After the pretensioner has been deployed during the first collision, you should not extend or retract the seat belt again. At this point, be sure to contact the authorised service centre for replacement.

- › When the pretensioner seat belt is working, white smoke will come out with a loud sound, but it will not cause a fire and is harmless to the human body.
- › When a pretensioner seat belt is scrapped, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. Accidental movements of the pretensioner seat belt can cause personal injury.

How to use the three-point seat belt

1. Hold the locking tab and pull the seat belt out of the retractor. Make sure that you do not twist the seat belt in the process. If you are unable to pull the seat belt out of the retractor, you will need to pull hard the seat belt and then release it. Doing so will trigger the retractor and allow you to pull out the seat belt smoothly.
2. Insert the lock tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.



51184F53FDCE

3. Pull up the shoulder belt and adjust the lap belt until the lap belt tightly fits the body. In this way, the strong hip bone can bear the impact and reduce the risk of injury.
4. Check that the shoulder belt is across the chest and the middle of the shoulder tightly. Thus, any impact will be distributed across the upper skeleton.
5. Press unlock button on the buckle to retract the seat belt. After the buckle has released the locking tab, hold on the locking tab until the seat belt has been fully retracted. Take care that the locking tab does not knock into other passengers or any nearby objects.

Airbags

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tips for safety

- › Airbags cannot be reused.

Once an airbag has been used, it will not work anymore in the second or subsequent collisions, so be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.

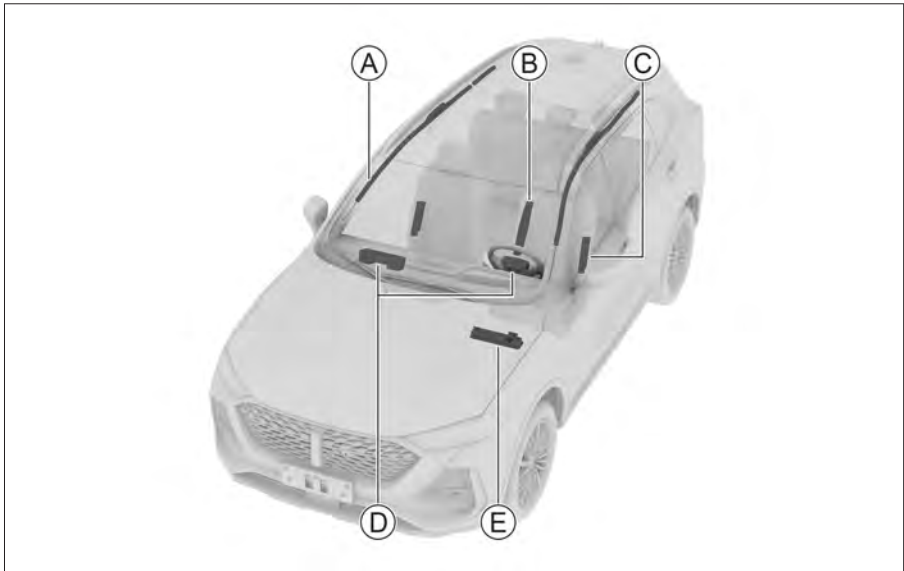
- › The airbags are auxiliary devices to protect the passenger safety and should be used with the seat belts. In order to obtain the effect of airbags, the passengers must wear the seat belts correctly and maintain the correct posture.
- › Proper use of airbags can realize their safety effectiveness to the full. If it is used improperly, it may not play a security role, but may bring harm to passengers.

- › When the airbags are being deployed you will notice some loud sounds and smoke. This is normal and will not lead to a fire. The smoke released, however, may cause breathing difficulty when inhaled by individuals suffering from asthma or other respiratory disease. At this moment, it is safer to flee out of the vehicle immediately. If you are unable to evacuate from the vehicle, open vehicle doors or windows to let fresh air in.
- › When any debris (or gas) released by airbags deployment comes in contact with the eyes or skin, clean such material off using water as soon as possible. Otherwise, individuals with skin hypersensitivity may experience a skin reaction.
- › Do not touch airbag components after the airbag has been deployed. Because its component parts will become very hot, it may cause burns and other major injuries.
- › Please do not use the airbag for any other purposes.
- › Please get in touch with authorised service centre if you need to install radio equipment. Electromagnetic waves emitted by wireless equipment have a significant impact on the airbag control units.
- › It is forbidden to strike or squeeze the airbags and the position around it.

Avoid the condition that the airbags cannot work normally during accident or the airbags are accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries to passengers or even death.

Airbags

Airbag



CB6582C42E93

- Ⓐ Curtain airbag
- Ⓑ Far-end airbag
- Ⓒ Side airbag
- Ⓓ Front airbag, for:
Driver airbag
Front passenger airbag
- Ⓔ Driver knee airbag

Front airbags

Introduction

The front airbags are located in the steering wheel and the instrument panel which is in front of the front passenger seat, with the airbag logo on the steering wheel and instrument panel. When the vehicle encounters a strong front impact, the seat belt will be tightened. At the same time, the airbags at the driver's side and front passenger's side will deploy in order to distribute and cushion any force directed towards the head and chest.

Operating principle

When a head-on collision occurs resulting in moderate or severe impact, the sudden deceleration of the vehicle will be noted by a sensor. At this time, the control module will immediately deploy the airbag.

Precautions

- › The airbag may deploy when the bottom of the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact :
 - 1) When the vehicle runs into the kerb.
 - 2) When the vehicle falls into, or runs over a deep pit or drain.
 - 3) When the vehicle climbs over the steps and hits or falls on the road.
- › The airbag may deploy when the vehicle rolls over 90° and 180°. However, it will not be able to function to its full capabilities.
- › The airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact :
 - 1) When the vehicle hits a concrete wall square at a speed below 25 km/h.
 - 2) When the vehicle collides with an object with a small surface area, such as a fixed electrical pole or tree, at a speed lower than 35 km/h.
- › If the object impacted changes shape or moves, the force from the collision will be reduced. At this point, the airbag may not deploy.

When the vehicle collides into a truck from the back, the vehicle will run under the cargo box. As the impact force recognized by the sensor is weak, the airbag may not deploy.
- › The airbag may also not deploy depending on the angle and direction of collision, even when vehicle speed is relatively high.
- › Please do not allow your body to get too close to the steering wheel or to the lower part of the instrument panel :

Airbags

- 1) When driving a vehicle normally, the driver shall stay away from the steering wheel as far as possible while maintaining the correct driving position.
 - 2) The front seats should be as far from the instrument panel as possible.
 - 3) All passengers should be belted up in the correct fashion for optimal protection.
- › Please do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean on the instrument panel while the vehicle is in motion.

Because the front airbag deploys at a high speed and with great force. If the passenger is too close to the airbag at this point, he or she may suffer severe injury or even death.

- › Please do not allow children to stand in front of the airbag.

When the front airbags deploys, it may cause severe injury or even death to child passengers. All children should be seated in the rear seats and be protected with the correct restraints.

- › Please adhere to the following rules, otherwise these items may cause severe injury to passengers during airbag deployment :

- 1) Please do not place objects on the instrument panel or lean umbrellas, etc. on it.
- 2) Please do not leave objects in the storage box exposed.

- 3) Please do not hang any objects on vehicle windows or on the inside rearview mirror.
- 4) Please do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn cover.
- 5) Please do not place luggage, pets or other objects between the airbag and the driver or front passenger.

- › Please do not clean the inside of the vehicle with water or cleaning solution.

The gas generator in airbag is a priming device. If it becomes damp, its normal operation will be affected or even cause serious injuries or death.

- › Please do not apply wax, stickers, or similar items to the airbag cover. Failure to adhere to the advice can impede airbag deployment.

- › Do not damage airbag cover. Otherwise, it will not work normally. Therefore, be sure not to open or damage the airbag cover.

- › Please do not dismantle, modify, or install equipment such as airbags, instrument panel and steering wheel. Improper operations can cause the airbag to malfunction or deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injury or even death.

- › Do not modify the suspension.

If the vehicle height or suspension stiffness is changed, the airbag may deploy by accident and cause injuries or even death.

- › Please consult with authorised service centre for assistance when you need to install a fender panel and baffle at the front of the vehicle.

Modifications to the front of the vehicle can cause distortion to collision signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby triggering accidental deployment of the airbag, which may cause serious injuries or even death.


- › Please be sure to consult with authorised service centre for assistance when you need to make repairs to the front of the vehicle or the front cab. Improper repairs can cause distortion to collision signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby leading to airbag malfunctions, which may cause serious injuries or even death.


Front passenger side airbag switch



6C5543183D3D

The front passenger side airbag switch is located on the side of the front passenger side instrument panel.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger side airbag switch to OFF position to turn off the front passenger side front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger side airbag OFF warning light  on the reading lamp is on.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger airbag switch to ON position to turn on the front passenger side front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger side airbag ON warning light  on the reading lamp is on.

NOTICE

Once the key is inserted, it needs to be pushed hard before it can be turned.

WARNING

- › Be sure not to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger side seat while the front passenger side airbag is working. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.
- › If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger side seat, be sure to turn off the front passenger side airbag. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.

In other conditions, do not turn the front passenger side airbag switch to OFF position at will. Otherwise, the front passenger side airbag will not be able to deploy if a serious collision occurs to the vehicle.

Side airbag

Overview

The side airbag is located inside the outer liner of the seat backrest, with the word "AIRBAG" marked on the seat backrest. The side airbag is a supplement in guaranteeing safety in addition to the seat belt. In case of collision from one side, the side airbag will reduce the harm to passengers in the vehicle and prevent further collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters collision from one side, the sensor will detect an acute change in acceleration on this side and then send a signal to the control device. The side airbag will deploy instantaneously if the operating conditions of the airbag are met.

When a side collision occurs, only the side airbag on the collision side will deploy. In case of collision on the front passenger side of the vehicle, the side airbag on the front passenger side will still deploy even though there is no one in that seat.

Precautions

- › The side airbag may not deploy sometimes when the vehicle encounters mild collisions described below:
 - 1) Front collision
 - 2) The signal sent to electronic control device indicates a mild side collision.
 - 3) Rear collision
 - 4) Rollover
- › Never place any object over the side airbag to keep it works well.
- › Never attach any object around the side airbag deployment area. Such objects may be dislodged when the side airbags deploy.
- › Never remove, repair or modify the seat with a side airbag and parts around the side airbag deployment area.
- › Do not lean against the side airbag deployment area.

Curtain airbags

Introduction

The curtain airbag is located on the roof lower edge; you can find airbag marks on pillar. The curtain airbag is a supplement to the seat belt. In case of side collision, the curtain airbag will reduce the injuries to passengers and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters impact from the side, the sensor will detect an acute change in vehicle speed and then send a signal to the control module. If the curtain airbag work conditions are met, the curtain airbag on the collision side will initiate instantaneously.

Precautions

- › The curtain airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision
 - 2) Electronic control unit receives a weak signal of mild side impact.
 - 3) Rear collision
 - 4) Rollover
- › Do not remain close to the vehicle doors, door pillars or roof rail, or kneel on a front passenger seat. Failure to adhere to the advice can cause passengers' heads to suffer a severe impact when the curtain airbag deploys, which may cause serious injuries or even death. Be sure to pay attention to it when children are in the vehicle.
- › Never attach any object around the curtain airbag deployment area. Failure to adhere to this can cause such objects to be dislodged when the curtain airbag deploys.
- › Do not hang heavy or sharp objects on the coat hook.

Do not use clothes hangers if you wish to hang your clothing, and opt for the coat hook directly instead. Failure to adhere to this can cause clothes hangers to be dislodged when the curtain airbag deploys.

- › Do not remove, repair or modify parts around the curtain airbag deployment area.

Do not modify roof, roof handrail, roof handrail bracket and side roof lamp.

Far-end airbag

Introduction

Far-end airbag is located in the outer gasket of the driver's seat backrest (the side away from the vehicle door), and there is an airbag sign on the seat backrest. In the event of a side collision, the deployment of far-end airbag can reduce the risk of injury caused by collision between the driver and the front passenger or by the driver hitting the front passenger side door or pillar, so as to protect heads, chests, and other important parts of passengers.

Operating principle

In the event of a side collision, the sensor will detect an acute change in vehicle side acceleration and then send a signal to the control module. If the airbag work condition is met, the far-end airbag will be deployed instantaneously.

Airbags

Precautions

- › The far-end side airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision
 - 2) Mild side collision with weak signals
 - 3) Rear collision
 - 4) Rollover
- › Do not use any items to cover the far-end airbag. Otherwise, the normal function of the far-end airbag may be disturbed.
- › Never attach any items around the far-end airbag deployment area. Otherwise, there may be a danger of these items being projectile through the interior when the far-end airbag is deployed.
- › Do not remove, repair or modify seats with far-end airbags and parts around the far-end airbag deployment area without permission.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Safety instructions for child seat

Warning label



This label, which is located on the front passenger side sun visor, is used to alert you that your vehicle is equipped with front airbag. Note the relevant precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use rear-facing child restraint systems on the seats protected by front airbag (deployed). Otherwise, child death or serious injury may occur.

- › If the child seat is not installed with ISOFIX, use the seat belt to install it and then follow the installation instructions attached to the child seat.
- › Properly fasten the child seat inside the vehicle.

If you are unable to install the child seat correctly, in the event of emergency braking or accident, severe injury or even death may occur.

- › Do not place unsecured child seat protectors in the vehicle.

If you leave it inside the vehicle, it may come into contact with passengers or other objects in the event of emergency braking or severe impact, causing a severe injury or even death.

- › Even when the child has sat in a child seat, take care that his or her head or body is not leaning against the vehicle door pillar or roof rail.

When the curtain airbag fully deploys, it can be very dangerous in this scenario as the deployment force may cause severe injury or even death to the child.

- › Depending on the different types of child seat, when installing or removing a child seat, refer to the install instructions and precautions attached with the child seat.
- › Be sure to leave enough space around the child seat and adjust the seat in front if necessary.

Child restraint system

- › If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

⚠ WARNING

The following instructions must be followed for using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- › When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated. The front passenger airbag must be activated as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is removed.
- › If necessary, adjust the seat backrest angle until there is stable contact between the seat backrest and the child seat.
- › When installing a child seat on the front seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the interior trim), the seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
- › Take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.
- › For Group 2 and Group 3 child seats, ensure that the guide device mounted on the child seat headrest is in front of the seat belt anchorage point on the centre body B-pillar.

The following instructions must be followed for using a child seat on the rear seat.

- › Remove the ISOFIX cover before installing a child seat with the ISOFIX system on the external seat.
- › It is recommended that the rear passenger seat backrest is adjusted to a vertical position so that there is safe contact between the backrest and the child seat.

Fixing points for child seat

Lower fixing points for child seat



There are two groups (4 pcs) of lower fixing points for the child seat in the gaps between the seat backrests and seat cushions on both sides of the rear row. Open and remove the fixing point trim cover before use.

Top tether strap fixing point for child seat



FAB70240B636

There are 2 fixing points for the child seat top tether strap on the rear side of rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Fixing points for child seat are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child seat. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Child restraint system

Recommended child seat categories

i-Size and ISOFIX are mounting systems for car child seats based on international standards. In the user's country, the ECE-R44 and ECE-R129 norms apply to child seats, both of which are applicable at the same time. ECE-R44 classifies child seats into weight groups and ECE-R129 into height groups. Only child seats that comply with the standards are allowed to be used in vehicles.

Weight group

Group	Weight (kg)
0	Maximum 10
0+	Maximum 13
1	9 to 18
2	15 to 25
3	22 to 36

Height group

Child seats classified according to height must comply with the requirements of the ECE-R129 norm regarding installation and safety. Refer to the instructions supplied with the child seats or consult the manufacturer of the child seats for the specific height classification and applicable seats.

Recommended child seat

Weight group	Manufacturer	Type	Remark
0 (maximum 10 kg)	Britax Römer	BABY-SAFE	Belted
0 + (maximum 13 kg)	Maxi Cosi	Cabriofix	Belted
1 (9 to 18 kg)	Britax Römer	King II LS	Belted
2 (15 to 25 kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix 2S*	ISOFIX and Belted
3 (22 to 36 kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix 2S	ISOFIX and Belted

*: Ensure that the seat belt is fastened through the safety guard and that the side impact guard is fully opened on the side near the door.

i NOTICE

Not every child is suitable for choosing a child seat in weight groups, and likewise not every child seat is suitable for your vehicle. It is therefore important to check that a child sits properly in the child seat and that the child seat is securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child seat installation method

When installing a child seat, you must use a child seat that is appropriate for the child's age, weight and size to restrain an infant or a child in the seat.

Child seat installed with the seat belt

The table below provides information on the suitability of a belt-mounted child seat for each seat in the vehicle.

Group	Seat position			
	Front passenger seat		Rear passenger seat	
	Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row external side	Rear-row centre
0 (maximum 10 kg)	X	U	U	U
0 + (maximum 13 kg)	X	U	U	U
1 (9 to 18 kg)	X	U	U	U
2 (15 to 25 kg)	X	U	U	U
3 (22 to 36 kg)	X	U	U	U

Note: The letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

U - This seat is suitable for category "Generic" child seats and is permitted for use in this weight group.

X - This position is not suitable for child seats.

1. If possible, when installing a child seat in the front, move the front seat to the end of its stroke; when installing a child seat in the rear, move the front passenger seat as far forward as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child in the rear.

Child restraint system

2. If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat to an upright position to ensure that the backrest can support the child seat stably and that the lap belt can safely restrain the child seat.
3. Adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
4. Pull out the shoulder belt, run the belt along the indicated route on the child seat and insert the lock tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
5. With your body weight pressing down on the child seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract and tighten. There must be no signs of slack to the shoulder belt.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

Child seats installed with the child seat fixing device

ISOFIX and i-Size are standard protection systems specially designed for child seats. The table below provides information on the suitability of ISOFIX or i-Size standard child seats for each seat in the vehicle.

Applicability information of child seat

Group	Child seat size category	Seat position			
		Front passenger seat		Rear passenger seat	
		Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row external side	Rear-row centre
0 (maximum 10 kg)	E	X	X	IL	X
0 + (maximum 13 kg)	E/D/C	X	X	IL	X
1 (9 to 18 kg)	D/C/B/B1/A	X	X	IL	X
2 (15 to 25 kg)	-	X	X	IUF	X
3 (22 to 36 kg)	-	X	X	IUF	X

Child restraint system

Group	Child seat size category	Seat position			
		Front passenger seat		Rear passenger seat	
		Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row external side	Rear-row centre

Note: The letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

IL - This seat is suitable for "Semi-Generic" certified ISOFIX child seats.

IUF - This seat is suitable for forward facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X - This position is not suitable for ISOFIX child seats.

Applicability information of i-Size child seat

Seat position			
Front passenger seat		Rear passenger seat	
Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row external side	Rear-row centre
X	X	i-U	X

Note: The letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

i-U-Suitable for forward or backward facing mounted i-Size child seats.

X - This position is not suitable for i-Size child seats.

1. Move the front passenger seat as far forward as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child in the rear.
2. Adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
3. Slide the child seat lock mechanism into the lower fixing point, and ensure that the 2 ISOFIX lock mechanisms are securely fixed.
4. When fixing the top tether strap, refer to the instruction manual of the child seat.
5. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

Child restraint system

WARNING

- › If the child seat is equipped with a top tether strap, tighten the top tether strap according to the installation instructions and precautions attached with the child seat.

Otherwise, it may cause severe injury or even death in the event of emergency braking or collision.

- › Do not lower the headrest after fastening the child seat top tether strap to its fixing point.

Otherwise, it may come into contact with the top tether strap and loosen the strap as a result. In the event of emergency braking or collision, this can cause the child seat to turn, bringing severe injury or even death.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

About the system

The vehicle anti-theft system helps to keep your vehicle and valuables from being stolen. The vehicle anti-theft system will emit audible and visual alarm if someone tries to enter the vehicle by force.

i NOTICE

Due to local regulations, models in some markets only give a light signal when the vehicle anti-theft alarm is triggered.

! WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the vehicle anti-theft system.

System activation

1. After the door is successfully locked from outside, the hazard warning lights will flash once and the vehicle enters the pre-arm mode.

In the pre-arm state, you can still operate the vehicle without triggering the anti-theft alarm.

2. After the pre-arm state lasts for about 15 seconds, the vehicle will automatically enter the armed state and the vehicle anti-theft function will be activated.

! CAUTION

Please check whether all the vehicle doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are completely closed. Otherwise, the vehicle anti-theft system cannot be activated.

i NOTICE

The central control button will fail in the armed and anti-theft state of the vehicle.

Alarm trigger condition

When the vehicle anti-theft system is on, the following actions can trigger an alarm:

- › The engine hood is open.
- › Use the mechanical key to open the vehicle doors.
- › Door or the tailgate is forcibly opened.

Alarm cancellation

After triggering the anti-theft alarm of the vehicle, the alarm can be reset by the following operations:

Vehicle anti-theft system

- › Switch power supply mode to ON mode.
- › Start the vehicle successfully.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, doors or the tailgate can be unlocked by using unlock button on the key, passive keyless entry or active entry.

System off

Unlock the door or tailgate with the smart key or Bluetooth key. The hazard warning lights flash twice, and the vehicle anti-theft function is turned off.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Instructions

On and off

You can make the following settings to the VMDR biometric identification function through the **【Vehicle settings】** → **【In-car】** → **【Driver monitoring system】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【VMDR biometric identification】** : you can turn on or off the VMDR biometric identification function temporarily.

i NOTICE

Whenever the power supply is switched to ON mode, the system is turned on by default.

- › **【Delay alarm】** : you can turn on or off the delay alarm function.

When the delay alarm function is activated, the vital signs monitoring system will delay the alarm for 10 minutes.

Triggering scenario

- › The alarm is triggered when the system detects the vital signs of a passenger or an animal left inside the vehicle after the power supply is in OFF mode with all windows closed and all doors locked. If the **【Delay alarm】** function is activated, the system will delay the alarm for about 10 minutes.
- › After the vehicle stops, the power supply is switched to OFF mode, all windows are closed and all doors and the tailgate remain locked. The system delays the alarm for approximately 10 minutes when it detects vital signs of a driver, an occupant or an animal left inside the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › When the alarm is triggered in this scenario, the warning time is delayed regardless of whether the **【Delay alarm】** function is activated or not.
- › The prerequisite for this scenario to trigger the alarm is that the **【Unlock when the vehicle is off】** function has been deactivated.

VMDR biometric identification

- › With the power supply in OFF mode, an adult or a child opens any door, gets into the vehicle and closes the door when all windows are closed but the doors are unlocked. In this case, all doors and the tailgate are closed but unlocked. The alarm is delayed for about 10 minutes when the system detects the vital signs of an adult or a child who has entered into the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › When the alarm is triggered in this scenario, the warning time is delayed regardless of whether the **【Delay alarm】** function is activated or not.
- › When the alarm is triggered in this scenario, you can cancel the alarm by a key only after locking and then unlocking process. You can also cancel the alarm by opening the door directly.

i NOTICE

- › This function is an auxiliary alert tool and is not liable for any injury or death of the occupant or animal left in the vehicle. Please check the in-vehicle conditions before leaving.

- › Please pay attention to the surrounding network. Network limitations (e.g. the vehicle is parked in an underground parking lot) may cause failure to send an alarm or delay in sending the alarm and failure to execute remote commands successfully.
- › Obstructions or moving objects can interfere with the normal operation of sensors and may affect the timeliness and accuracy of the system detection.
- › This function may not accurately detect vital signs from too small living things.
- › When an adult is resting in the vehicle and the vehicle is in the locked state, it is recommended that you temporarily turn off this function first. Otherwise, the alarm will be triggered when the function triggering conditions are met, affecting the rest.

Alarm mode

Alarm is reported in the following ways

- › Hazard warning lamps flash and horns sound.
- › Prompt on the mobile APP.
- › Send email reminders.

The current alarm can be turned off by unlocking the doors.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Emergency shut-off system

When the impact sensor detects a certain degree of impact, the system will cut off the high voltage current and fuel supply, and minimize the danger caused by electric shock and fuel leakage.

If the emergency cut-off system is activated, the vehicle cannot be restarted. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Event data recorder

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

System introduction

The vehicle is equipped with the event data recorder (EDR).

The event data recorder (EDR) is mainly used to record data related to vehicle dynamic system and safety system when a vehicle collision happens in order to help understand the operation conditions of vehicle system. However, since collision severity and type vary, EDR may not record the data.

i NOTICE

EDR records data only when a vehicle meets a major collision. When the vehicle runs normally, EDR does not record data.

Data reading

Except the vehicle manufacturer, other parties (such as law enforcement agencies) can read the data recorded in EDR after connecting the laptop with the on-board diagnostic interface to enter the EDR by using CANoe equipment.

The data reading equipment can be purchased from CANoe software vendors.

The data items recorded by EDR and their uses are as follows:

Data item	Applications
Braking state	Record the brake pedal status during collision
Speed during collision	Record the speed at the time of collision
Status of the seat belt lock body	Record the safety belt status during collision
Status of the airbag warning lamp	Record whether the airbag failure warning lamp is on before collision

Data disclosure

Any data recorded by EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following circumstances:

- › With the consent of the vehicle owner or lessee.

- › To be used in a lawsuit at the official request of the police, court, or government department.

However, if necessary, the data recorded by the EDR will be used to:

- › Research and develop the vehicle safety performance.
- › For R&D purpose, data is disclosed to the third parties without disclosing specific information about the owners and their vehicles.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Data privacy and protection

Vehicle related data

In order to ensure the safe operation of the vehicle, the electronic control unit may process data collected and generated by sensors and exchanged with each other.

In general, most of these data are only collected temporarily and only used between vehicle systems. Only a small part of the data will be saved in the data memory, if necessary, for personalized settings, etc.

The data memory on the vehicle is used to temporarily or permanently record information on vehicle status, component loads, maintenance requirements and technical faults.

Depending on vehicle equipment, these data may include:

- › Vehicle status information such as vehicle speed, wheel speed, lateral acceleration, etc.
- › Environmental conditions such as temperature, rainfall, etc.
- › Vehicle system working conditions such as fluid level, tyre pressure, battery status, etc.
- › Fault information for important systems such as lights, brakes, etc.
- › Responses triggered by vehicle systems under special driving conditions, such as airbag deployment, driving assist system adjusting the vehicle, etc.
- › Additional information about vehicle damage.

In special cases, the data memory may need to store temporarily collected data, for example when a vehicle malfunction is detected.

After troubleshooting, the corresponding fault information in the data memory will be deleted and continuously covered by the latest collected information.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle is repaired or maintained, the relevant data in the fault memory can be operated by a authorised service centre.

Data read through the on-board diagnosis connector may assist in failure analysis, warranty service, and quality improvement. When necessary, it may be sent to the vehicle manufacturer along with the vehicle identification number to understand the customer's warranty and quality assurance requirements, and to provide a basis for product recall and division of responsibilities.

WARNING

The fault memory can only be read by a authorised service centre through the on-board diagnosis connector. Never read it by yourself. Improper use of the on-board diagnosis connector may cause damage to the vehicle, or even cause an accident, resulting in personal injury.

System related data

Data recorded by vehicle systems or external storage devices connected to the vehicle.

- › During personalized settings, data related to certain functions providing comfort and convenience, such as seat position, air conditioning settings, rearview mirror position, etc., are stored or changed.
- › Data transmitted to the vehicle audio-visual system by connecting an external storage device, such as playing multimedia data, using Bluetooth devices, etc.

NOTICE

It is at your discretion whether to transfer this data to third parties.

Personal data

Vehicle identification numbers or vehicle license plates can be traced back to the owner of the vehicle, so the data generated or processed by the electronic control unit is personally relevant to you under certain conditions. From these data, private information about your driving behaviour, residence, driving route or vehicle usage behaviour may be derived.

Except for functions and services required by law, such as emergency assistance. Vehicle manufacturers only collect, process and use personal data on the basis of legal permission or your consent.

Mobile interconnection

If the vehicle is equipped with the corresponding equipment, you can connect the mobile to the on-board USB port through the data cable to activate the mobile interconnection function. In this case, pictures and sounds of the mobile phone can be output through the audio-visual system, and other vehicle-related data, such as vehicle location, can also be transmitted to the mobile. However, there will be no other interactions between the mobile and the vehicle, especially active access to vehicle data.

Information security

Additional data processing procedures, such as whether and which settings can be made, can be found by contacting the supplier of the respective app, depending on the app and the operating system of the phone.

According to relevant laws, local polices, courts or government departments have the right to read vehicle data by themselves under special circumstances.

Third-party online services

If the vehicle has the corresponding equipment, when online services provided by third parties are used, the responsibility for data protection and privacy provisions rests with the third-party providers.

Your rights with regard to data protection

According to relevant laws, if your personal data is stored by vehicle manufacturers and third parties, you can make a request to know what data about you was stored, the purpose for which it was stored and where it was obtained from.

For some data stored on the vehicle, you can contact the authorised service centre to obtain them.

Legal requirements for data disclosure

According to relevant laws, vehicle manufacturers are obliged to disclose the data stored in the vehicle to the extent required by the official request of the local polices, courts or government departments, in special cases such as investigating criminal acts.

5

Emergency

On-board tools.....	268
Emergency tyre repair and in- flation	269
In case of a vehicle accident	272
Jump start	275
Engine overheating	277
Towing.....	279
Service and rescue	283

On-board tools

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Location of toolkit

The reflective vest and the first aid kit are placed in the storage box on the passenger side, and other on-board tools are placed in the luggage area.

CAUTION

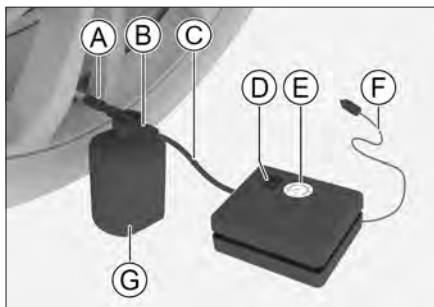
- › The driver himself must be familiar with the placement and use of the toolkit in order to cope with emergency.
- › You must return the toolkit to its designated position after use and fix it securely. Random placement may cause accidents.
- › If the vehicle is equipped with the first aid kit, the medicines in the first aid kit have an expiry date and need to be checked regularly, and should be replaced in time if necessary.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Inflator and tyre repair fluid



- Ⓐ Outlet tube
- Ⓑ Air inlet
- Ⓒ Inflation tube
- Ⓓ inflator switch
- Ⓔ Inflator
- Ⓕ Power cable
- Ⓖ Tyre repair liquid

In case of tyre leak caused by puncture of foreign matters, emergency maintenance can be carried out with inflator and tyre repair fluid.

i NOTICE

- › The inflator and tyre repair fluid are only suitable for sealed tyres with puncture on the tread.
- › The tyre repair fluid has limited ability to seal the puncture of the tyre wall. If the tyre has large fissures, cracks or similar damage, tyre repair fluid shall not be used to seal the tyre.
- › The tyre repair fluid tank must be replaced after use. It is recommended that it should be replaced by professionals from authorised service centre.

⚠ WARNING

- › If the tyre repair fluid has expired, please replace it and treat it as hazardous waste.
- › Eating the tyre repair fluid by mistake is harmful to health. It may cause allergic reaction even in the case of skin contact. In case of contact with skin, immediately wash the sealing liquid from skin with water or soapy water.
- › The tyre repair fluid must be stored out of reach of children.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

Emergency tyre repair

1. If the tyre is repaired in a place where vehicles pass, please put a warning triangle at an appropriate position and turn on the hazard warning lights.
If the tyre puncture is caused by nails or similar objects, leave the objects in the tyre. This helps to seal the puncture hole.
2. Take out the tyre sealant tank and inflater under the luggage area cover plate.
3. Attach the speed limit sign that comes with the tyre sealant tank on the centre of the steering wheel as a reminder to drive within 80 km/h (50 mph).
4. Shake the tyre sealant and use it evenly. Make sure that the inflater switch is off (in position "0"), and then take out the power supply cord and inflation tube.
5. Unscrew the cover of the tyre sealant inlet, connect the inflation tube to the tyre sealant inlet and tighten it, and connect the outlet tube of the tyre sealant to the tyre valve.

CAUTION

The inflation tube cannot be bent.

6. Plug the inflater power supply cord into the 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.

7. Switch the inflater switch to the position "I" to start the inflater and inflate the tyre to 240 to 250 kPa.

WARNING

Do not stand beside the tyre when operating the inflater. If the tyre is cracked or uneven, the inflater must be turned off immediately.

CAUTION

- › When the inflater is turned on, the air pressure will be very high at first, then decrease slowly, and gradually increase with the inflation air pressure.
 - › The inflater should not run for more than 10 minutes. Otherwise, there is a risk of overheating.
 - › If the tyre pressure is still lower than 170 kPa after inflation, it means that the tyre has a large hole, so please do not continue to inflate it. At this time, you are suggested to contact the authorised service centre.
8. Turn off the inflater, take out the power supply cord from the 12 V outlet, and take out the tyre sealant from the tyre valve.
 9. Drive immediately (within 1 minute) at a speed of 20 to 60 km/h for about 5 km, so that the tyre sealant can seal the tyre evenly.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

10. Connect the inflater and read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
 - › If the tyre pressure is lower than 170 kPa, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed. At this time, do not continue driving and please contact the authorised service centre.
 - › If the tyre pressure exceeds 170 kPa, the tyre should be inflated to the pressure specified in the tyre pressure label.
11. Turn off the inflater, disconnect the inflation tube and the power supply cord, and install the dust cover of the tyre valve.

CAUTION

After the tyre is inflated, install the dust cover of the tyre valve to prevent the gravel and dust from damaging the tyre valve.

WARNING

After the tyre is repaired with inflater and tyre sealant, the driving speed should not exceed 80 km/h and the driving distance should not be more than 200 km. You are recommended to repair or replace the damaged tyre as soon as possible, and inform the maintenance technician that the tyre contains tyre sealant.

Tyre inflation

When the tyre pressure is too low, you can use an inflater to inflate the tyre.

1. Make sure the inflater is turned off, and take out the power cord and inflation tube.
2. Screw the inflation tube into the tyre valve.
3. Plug the power cord into the 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.
4. Turn the inflater switch to position "I" to start the inflater.

CAUTION

The inflater shall not run for more than 10 minutes; otherwise, there is a risk of overheating.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in the tyre pressure label.
6. Turn off the inflater, disconnect the inflation tube and the power cord, and install the dust cover of the tyre valve.

In case of a vehicle accident

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

In case of a vehicle accident

When the vehicle is forced to stop on road because of traffic incidents or vehicle breakdown, in order to warn other vehicles, take the following measures:

- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Wear a reflective vest supplied with your vehicle.
- › Place the warning triangle behind your vehicle in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury and death when a traffic accident occurs, please observe the following precautions:

- › If bare wires are detected inside or outside vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

- › Do not touch the high-voltage components, orange high-voltage cables and their connectors. Otherwise, serious injuries or death caused by electric shock may occur.
- › If there is a liquid leakage, do not touch such liquid. It may be a liquid leaking from the traction battery pack. If the skin or eyes are inadvertently exposed to the liquid, rinse with plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately to avoid further injury.
- › If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a potential fire risk. In this case, place the vehicle in a safe area for monitoring to prevent fire.
- › If you are not sure whether the vehicle is damaged or safe, stay away from the vehicle as soon as possible.
- › When an accident causes a fire on the vehicle, use a special fire extinguisher for electrical fires to extinguish the fire. Use of water or improper fire extinguishers may result in serious injuries or death due to electric shock.

In case of a fire accident to the vehicle

If heavy smoke emits from the vehicle or a fire accident occurs, you shall pull over to a sparsely populated place immediately, turn off the power (ignition) supply switch, and evacuate passengers away from the vehicle quickly. Under the condition of ensuring personal safety, perform the following operations:

- › Call the police according to the on-site situation.
- › If you can confirm that the fire is small and does not involve a high-voltage system, you can try to use a vehicle fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire in time; if the fire is large or the origin of fire is near the power battery, immediately move away from the vehicle and stand at the upwind position, and notify the firefighters immediately. Do not use water to extinguish the fire by yourself to prevent the risk of electric shock.
- › Anyone inhaling heavy smoke accidentally should be transferred for medical attention as soon as possible.

WARNING

- › The burning of lithium batteries will produce high temperature and harmful gases, so please stay away from the burning vehicle as much as possible.

- › Please do not touch any liquid leaked from the power battery. In case of contact with skin or eyes accidentally, please rinse it immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice in time to avoid further injury.
- › If firefighters use water to extinguish the fire, please do not touch the water on the ground to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- › Due to the possibility of reburning of the lithium battery, even if the open fire is extinguished, do not approach the vehicle rashly and note whether the vehicle still has heavy smoke or open fire.

How to prevent fires

Fire accidents pose a serious threat to your life and property. Make sure to follow the methods below to prevent fire accidents:

- › Do not store flammable and explosive substances in the vehicle.
During the hot season when the sun is shining, the interior of the vehicle is very hot, and if flammable and explosive items such as lighters, perfume and alcohol are stored in the vehicle, they can easily cause a fire or even an explosion.
- › Do not leave a clear bottle with unfinished water in the vehicle.

In case of a vehicle accident

When exposed to the sun, especially in the hot season, a clear water bottle resembles a convex lens, and the converging sunlight can easily cause burns to the interiors of the vehicle or even cause a fire.

- › Do not dispose of cigarette butts at will.
Stub out cigarette butts and properly dispose of them.
- › Do not modify the vehicle wiring or install additional electrical appliances.
The addition of other high-powered electrical appliances (lights, speakers, etc.) can cause an excessive load on the wiring, which can easily lead to overheating and even a fire. Do not use fuses of different colours or amperage or replace fuses with other metal wires.
- › Always carry a fire extinguisher on your vehicle and know how to use it.
Check and replace the fire extinguisher on a regular basis to ensure its reliability.
- › Visit the authorised service centre on schedule for inspection and maintenance.

In case of vehicle immersion accident

To avoid vehicle immersion, we suggest that when the early warning is issued for rainstorms, floods and other severe conditions, the vehicle can be parked on higher terrain in advance, not the low-lying parking lots and underground garages with unreasonable design.

When the vehicle is partially or completely immersed in water, the vehicle will not have a greater risk of electric shock due to immersion in water, provided that the body and chassis are not damaged. However, professional rescue personnel must still wear the necessary personal protective equipment to handle flooded vehicles. After the vehicle is removed from the water, the battery safety switch should be disconnected in time.

WARNING

Handling a flooded vehicle without the necessary personal protective equipment may result in serious personal injury or death.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery

- › The vehicle cannot be started.
- › Headlamps are darker than normal.
- › The horn cannot give a sound or the sound is weak.

How to jumpstart the vehicle

Auxiliary terminal post

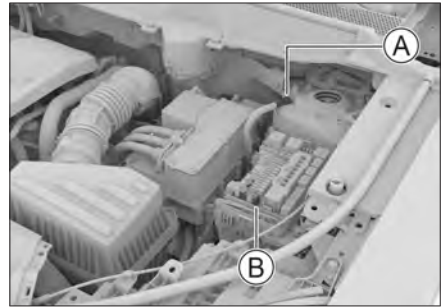
If you are unable to start the vehicle with the undervoltage battery, you can connect the battery of another vehicle by a jumper cable to start the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Not all vehicle batteries can be used. Jumpstart can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.
- › The cross-section of the jumper cable is no less than 25 mm².

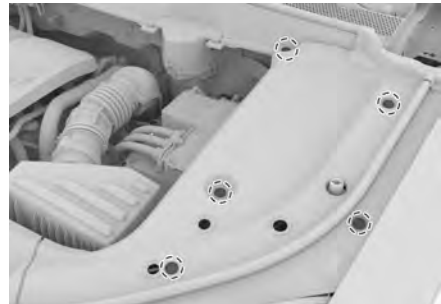
- › Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

The auxiliary terminal posts are located near the fuse box in the engine compartment.



- (A) Negative auxiliary terminal post
- (B) Positive auxiliary terminal post

Before use, remove all clips from the trim cover with a flat head screwdriver and remove the trim cover.



Then remove the fuse box cover to reveal the positive auxiliary terminal post.

Jump start

Connecting the jumper cable

Before starting, turn off all electrical appliances like the radio, which are not required in the rescue vehicle and the undervoltage vehicle.

1. Clamp the electrode connector of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal or the positive auxiliary terminal post of the rescue vehicle.
2. Clamp the other end of electrode connector to the positive battery terminal or the positive auxiliary terminal post of the undervoltage vehicle.
3. Clamp the electrode connector of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal or the negative auxiliary terminal post of rescue vehicle.
4. Clamp the other end of the electrode connector to the negative battery terminal or the negative auxiliary terminal post of the undervoltage vehicle.

WARNING

- › During charging or jumpstart, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion. Keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- › Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injury to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

- › When connecting or removing jumper cables, do not wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.
- › Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative poles.

Jumpstart

1. Start the rescue vehicle and hold for approximately 5 minutes.
2. Start the undervoltage vehicle.

If the undervoltage vehicle fails to start, wait a few minutes before starting it so that the depleted battery can receive current.

If the undervoltage vehicle starts successfully, remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of connection.

CAUTION

If a battery is often undervoltage, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Engine overheating

i NOTICE

Under extreme conditions (such as dragging, towing, climbing, overloading, etc.), the engine may overheat and the power of the whole vehicle will decrease.

Overheating symptoms

- › The water temperature indicator is in the red zone.
- › Engine accelerates weakly.
- › There is steam emanating from the hood.
- › A/C compressor may stop working automatically.
- › The power battery is slowly charged or can not be charged during driving, resulting in a continuous drop in battery level.

Handling methods

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place and shut down the engine.
If the A/C system has been turned on at this point, turn it off.
2. Check if steam is emanating from the hood.
 - › If no steam is emanated, open the engine hood and then start the engine.
 - › If steam is emanating, wait until there is no more steam. Open the hood, and then run the engine.
3. Check if the cooling fan is running.
 - › If the fan is not working, shut down the engine and contact a authorised service centre.
 - › If the fan is running normally, wait for the water temperature to begin to drop, and then turn off the engine.
4. Check the coolant level.
Add the coolant if the coolant level is too low. And check for pipeline leakage; if there is any leakage, contact a authorised service centre.
5. Check whether there is any foreign object in the core of the radiator.
If there is any foreign object, remove it.

Engine overheating

WARNING

- › Do not open the engine hood immediately if you see steam emanating from the engine hood. Doing so may cause serious injury such as burns.
- › When the radiator is at a higher temperature, do not open the radiator cap or the overflow tank lid. Otherwise, steam or coolant escaping may cause severe injuries such as burns.
- › When opening the radiator cap or the overflow tank lid, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Also, open the cap slowly after covering it with a piece of cloth.
- › When the engine is running, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Otherwise, there is a risk of your hands or clothing becoming caught within and of severe injury as a result.
- › Do not add coolant when the engine is overheated. If a coolant is suddenly added, it is easy to damage the engine. Add a coolant after the engine is completely cooled.

CAUTION

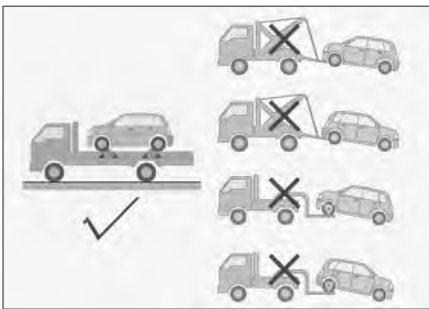
If the water temperature indicator comes to the red warning range again during driving, head to your nearest authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Transporting with professional vehicles

The vehicle is not allowed to be towed with wheels on the ground. When the vehicle breaks down, please use a flatbed vehicle for transportation, so please contact an authorised service centre in case of breakdown.



93143574E657

⚠ WARNING

- › You must obey the local laws and regulations related to towing.

- › This vehicle can only be transported on a flatbed vehicle, and it is not allowed to be transported with the tyres on the ground. Otherwise the vehicle will be severely damaged. Secure the vehicle in place when transporting the vehicle.
- › Do not tow the vehicle with a trailer hook, towing rope or chain, etc.

In case of a vehicle breakdown

Pushing the vehicles

⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow the vehicle with trailer hooks, towing ropes or chains, as this will seriously damage the vehicle.

When the vehicle breaks down, in order to get the vehicle out of the danger area, the maximum distance that the vehicle can be pushed is not more than 50 meters and the maximum speed is not more than 5 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

Note the following when pushing the vehicle:

- › When pushing the vehicle, the driver must sit inside to control the steering wheel and the brake pedal. Make sure that its wheels, axles, steering, braking, and transmission system (including transmission) are all in good condition.

Towing

- › Start the vehicle and switch the gear to “N”.

If the vehicle will not start, switch the supply mode to ON and shift the gear to “N”.

Do not push the vehicle when failing to switch the gear to “N”.

- › Turn on the hazard warning lights, and release the parking brake.
- › Do not push the vehicle to coast downhill.
- › Do not push the vehicle backwards.

Towing other faulty vehicles

1. When towing, turn on the hazard warning lights and follow relevant local laws and regulations.
2. Start slowly until the tow rope tightens, then accelerate carefully.

WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

CAUTION

- › Do not tow a vehicle heavier than your vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle may be easily damaged.
- › Avoid sudden starts or unstable driving operations to prevent excessive tension acting on the trailer hook and the tow rope.
- › Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.

- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out

When driving in snow, mud and sand, the vehicle is easy to get stuck or bottom out. Therefore, you should drive carefully.

If the vehicle gets stuck, you can:

1. Turn the vehicle off and make sure that you have applied the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tyres.
3. Place wood blocks, stones or other materials to help improve the tyre adhesion.
4. Restart the vehicle with the proper driving mode selected.
5. Release the parking brake and speed up carefully to get the vehicle out of the pit.

WARNING

While freeing the vehicle, pay attention to the following:

- › Make sure that the surrounding area is clear and free from any other vehicles, objects, or persons.
- › Please be especially careful, considering that the vehicle will suddenly rush forwards or backwards when the vehicle gets out from the pit.

- › Check whether there are larger objects such as stones in the mud or snow when getting the vehicle out of mud or snow. Please remove them timely to avoid damage to the vehicle body and sensors during getting out.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out, please contact professional rescue teams or service providers if the vehicle cannot get out of the trap by the methods above. Dragging the vehicle unprofessionally for rescue is prohibited.

⚠ WARNING

Please observe the following precautions during rescue to avoid potential vehicle damage and ensure personal safety.

- › When using a trailer hook for towing, securely fasten a recovery blanket in the middle of the tow rope. This precaution prevents the trailer hook or rope from breaking and rebounding, thus averting potential vehicle damage and ensuring personal safety.
- › Never drag the vehicle from the side or vertically, with the best angle of the trailer hook within the range of 5° up and down and 25° left and right.

- › Never drag the vehicle during the launch start. The towing speed should not exceed 5 km/h (start off slowly until the tow rope is taut). The maximum distance of towing should not exceed 50 m.
- › When using a trailer hook for towing, ensure that the drag or towing force does not surpass the weight of the vehicle.

Tow hook

Front tow hook

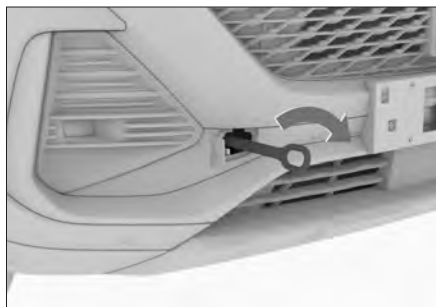
1. In the gap at the tow hook cover, pry down the cover using a flathead screwdriver wrapped by the cloth.



42851AB56832

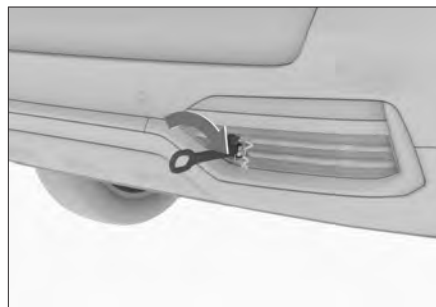
Towing

2. Screw the tow hook clockwise into the hole and fasten it with a wheel nut wrench.



962103A8A942

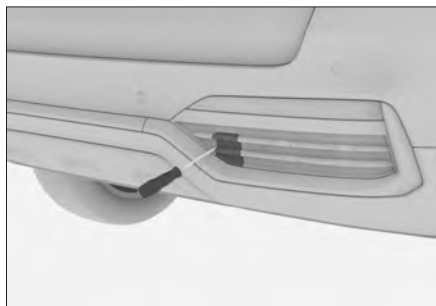
2. Screw the tow hook clockwise into the hole and fasten it with a wheel nut wrench.



95BA7130D3CD

Rear tow hook

1. In the gap at the tow hook cover, pry down the cover using a flathead screwdriver wrapped by the cloth.



FC00317A91F9

Tow rope

Tow ropes should be elastic to protect the vehicle. We recommend a rope or cable made of synthetic fibre or similar elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope to the designated tow hook or towing eye.

Be careful not to damage the vehicle body when attaching the tow rope. The distance between the towing and towed vehicles should be greater than four metres and less than ten metres.

Tie a marking flag to the middle of the tow rope. When possible, use reflective material on the tow rope when towing at night to increase visibility.

⚠ CAUTION

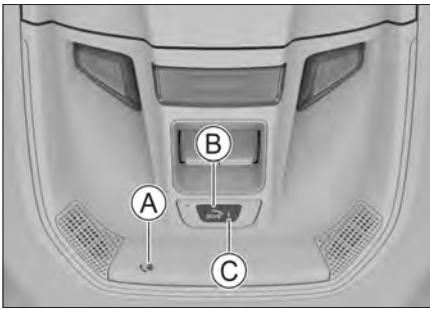
- › A tow rope must be separately purchased.
- › To avoid damaging the bumper, do not use a steel cable for towing.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Emergency call system

The control buttons and the indicator light of the emergency call system are located on the reading lamp panel.



026FF550BF74

- Ⓐ Staff service button (☎)
- Ⓑ Emergency rescue button (sos)
- Ⓒ Emergency call indicator light

Staff service

Press and hold the staff service button ☎ to trigger a call for staff service.

The staff service allows you to search for destinations and points of interest, inquire about information, book services, ask questions about emergency calls and ask for roadside assistance.

During a call, press and hold the staff service button ☎ to end the call.

Emergency rescue

Press the emergency rescue button sos and release it within 0.5 to 4 seconds to trigger an emergency rescue call. To cancel the call, press the button sos again within 4 seconds; otherwise the call cannot be cancelled. Once a call has been established, it can only be cancelled by the PSAP (rescue centre).

When the collision occurs (the airbag deploys), the emergency rescue call will be triggered. And you cannot manually stop it when calling.

When an emergency call is triggered, information relating to the rescue service is automatically sent, e.g. the current location of the vehicle. (▷ Page 264) The rescue centre will receive the request for vehicle rescue in the first instance.

i NOTICE

Avoid to trigger the emergency rescue call arbitrarily and frequently.

Service and rescue

CAUTION

Under the influence of many factors, the emergency rescue call will not work in following situations (including but not limited to):

- › Emergency rescue call will not be triggered when the emergency call system is faulty or damaged.
- › You will not be able to make a normal rescue call to the customer service due to damaged audio device, or damage to or false connection of the wiring harness connecting the emergency call system or audio device.
- › The airbag is not deployed in slight collision or other abnormal situations, the rescue call cannot be triggered automatically. At this point, you can make emergency rescue call through triggering it manually or other ways.
- › The emergency rescue call will not be manually activated if the emergency rescue button is damaged.
- › The emergency rescue call will not be activated under the condition of weak signal of mobile network (mobile phone signal), disturbance, shield and so on.
- › When the GPS device is damaged or in weak signal area (such as underground garage, tunnel or mountain area), the vehicle position cannot be located.

- › After the vehicle is powered off, the emergency rescue call will not be activated.
- › The emergency rescue call cannot be used due to force majeure factors such as riot, fire, flood, storm, explosion, war, government action, judicial administrative department command, and social environment.
- › The emergency rescue service is not available because you have downloaded and installed other software or visited other websites that contain viruses, Trojan horses or other malicious programs that threaten the security of your device and data.
- › Other objective factors that the emergency rescue call cannot be used normally.

Emergency call indicator light

Indicator state	State description
Off	Under normal conditions
Green light stays on.	The emergency call system is engaged.
Green light flashes quickly.	End of the call to the emergency call system
Red light flashes quickly.	The emergency call system is not connected within 3 minutes.

Indicator state	State description
Red light flashes slowly.	The emergency call system detects through its self-test that the backup battery level is low.
Red light stays on.	The emergency call system finds through its self-test that the fault could not be eliminated.

WARNING

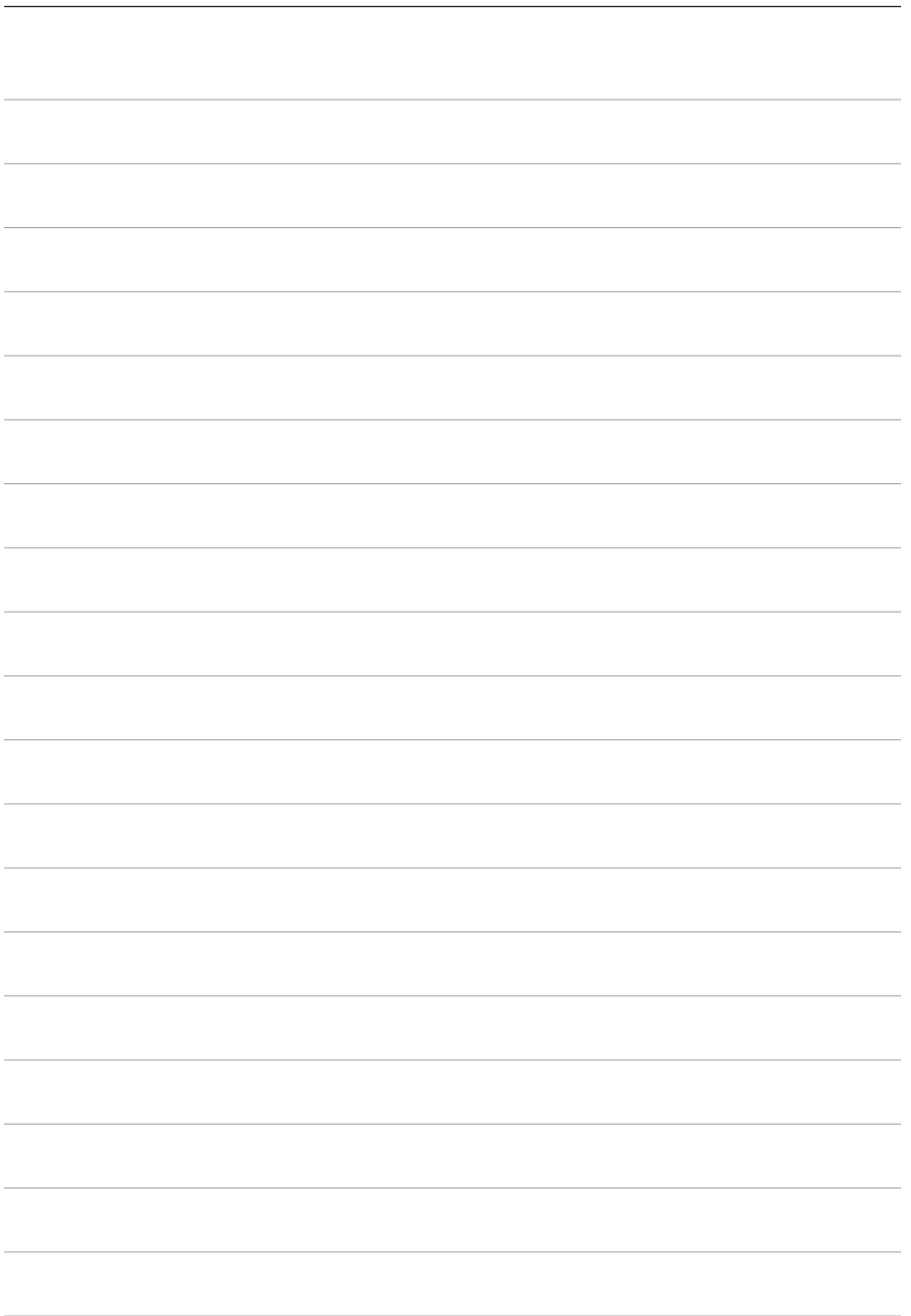
Do not modify the emergency call system.

NOTICE

For daily use, observe the following recommendations:

- › Check regularly whether the emergency call system operates normally. When the emergency call indicator light is off, the system is normal. If a fault occurs, go to a service station for inspection and repair.
- › It is recommended that the internal battery of the emergency call system will be replaced at least once every 3 years.

If the instrument remind you to replace the spare battery of the emergency call system, go to a service station promptly to replace it.



6

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance.....	288
Engine compartment	289
Safety labels and signs.....	295
Part replacement.....	298
Vehicle maintenance.....	304
Environmental protection information	316

Necessity of vehicle maintenance

Vehicle maintenance, a health diagnosis of the vehicle, can reduce the trouble of repairing the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in use, its components and parts will inevitably wear out. To ensure safe driving conditions, regular inspections, maintenance, and repairs are required to maintain and restore vehicle performance.

Vehicle maintenance making you drive more safely

During the maintenance, you can carry out necessary preventive maintenance according to the use of the components and parts, so that you can safely drive the vehicle before the next maintenance.

Extending the service life of the vehicle and reducing the use cost of the vehicle

Components and parts such as brake linings and tyres, etc. cannot be used permanently, as they will gradually wear out while in use. Use of components and parts that exceed the wear limit is likely to cause vehicle breakdown and even lead to traffic accidents. Therefore, it is necessary to conduct regular maintenance.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all of standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Safety tips

WARNING

- › The engine compartment is a hazardous area for operation and must be handled with extreme caution!
- › To avoid personal injury, do not touch high-voltage components, cables and connectors.
- › Never carry out relevant inspection work when the vehicle is started, because rotating parts (such as radiator fans), high-voltage components, power systems, etc. may lead to other dangers.
- › When performing oils inspection and filling operations, observe the following requirements; otherwise burns or fire may occur:
 - The vehicle is shut down.
 - The parking brake is applied.
 - Let the engine and the drive motor cool completely.
 - Keep children away from the engine compartment.
 - Do not splash oils on the engine.
 - Do not allow water to come into contact with the engine compartment.
- › When performing operations related to the fuel system, observe the following precautions; otherwise fire may occur:
 - Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
 - Do not smoke.
 - Do not operate near open flames.

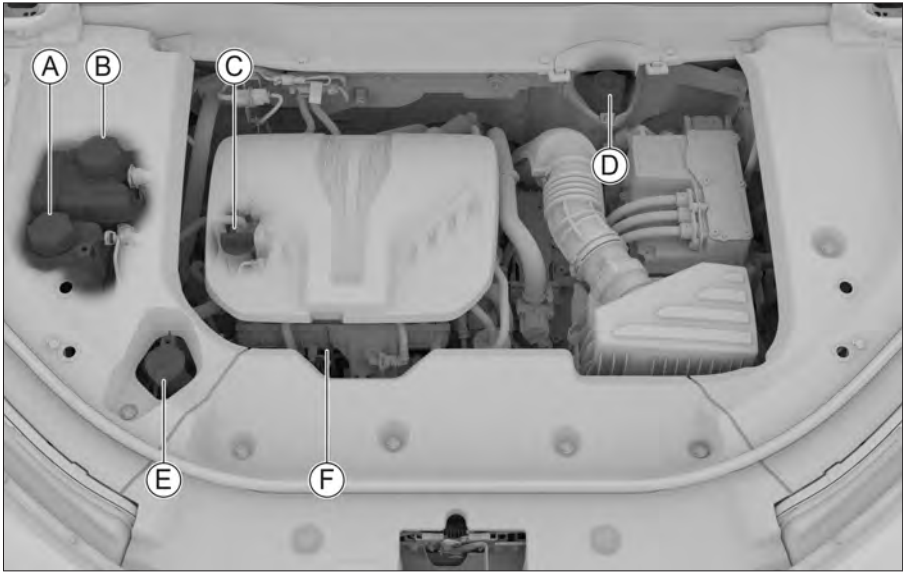
CAUTION

When adding oils, be careful not to misuse them. Otherwise, serious functional defects or damages to vehicle parts may be caused.

Engine compartment

Fluid level

Vehicle equipped with E20N engine

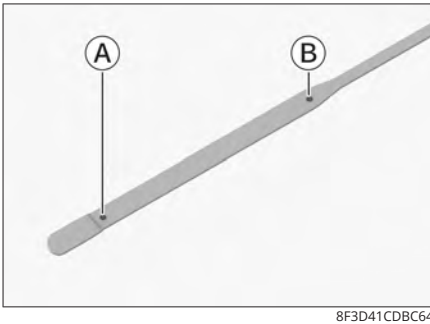


011EDF4FA169

- Ⓐ Overflow tank (engine cooling system)
- Ⓑ Overflow tank (motor cooling system)
- Ⓒ Engine oil filler cap
- Ⓓ Brake fluid tank
- Ⓔ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓕ Engine oil dipstick

Engine oil

Check



Ⓐ Lower limit

Ⓑ Upper limit

Stop the vehicle on flat ground. Warm up the engine to normal water temperature, and then switch the power supply to OFF mode. Wait for 10 minutes before conducting the engine oil level check.

The oil level should be between the maximum and minimum levels marked on the oil dipstick.

If the engine oil level is close to or lower than the lower limit marked, top up engine oil until it is at the level between the upper and lower limits marked.

i NOTICE

- › The shape of the oil dipstick vary from engine model.
- › Please check that the engine oil level is not less than 1/3 of the dipstick scale (between the upper limit and the lower limit) before the vehicle climbs an extreme slope. Otherwise, add engine oil.

! WARNING

- › When the engine is running, if you contact or get close to the rotating parts such as the belt or the fan, your hands, clothing, tools and so on may be trapped into the rotating parts, resulting in accidents.
- › Take care to prevent burns when checking or adding engine oil.
- › Please keep the engine oil in a safe place when it is not in use. If the engine oil leaks into the ground or floats on the water surface, environment will be polluted.

Filling

Open the engine oil filler cap, and slowly pour the oil so as to avoid oil spill. If it spills accidentally, it should be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the compartment components.

Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring engine performance and lifespan. Therefore, it is important to use high-quality and purified oil. Please use only engine oil that meets specifications so as to ensure the vehicle performance.

Engine compartment

Engine oil additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives, as additives cannot improve the performance and durability of the engine but reacts chemically with engine oil, causing oil invalid and damaging engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Please check and replace engine oil on a regular basis. Otherwise, insufficient oil levels or deteriorated engine oil may cause poor lubrication of engine rotation parts, thereby cause sintering and hence damage to the engine.
- › The engine oil works for lubrication and cooling. The engine oil level goes down over time even if you are driving normally, as a certain amount of engine oil for lubricating the piston and the valve will also be mixed in the combustion chamber and burned. Engine oil levels may go down depending on the specific driving conditions.
- › Please do not add excessive engine oil.

Brake fluid

Check

The fluid level in the tank should be checked regularly.

Check that the fluid level in the tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum level marked, add new brake fluid until the level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the braking system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

1. Push the pawl above the brake fluid cover inward, pull the three clips under the cover and pull them up to remove the cover.



B300BA68167D

2. Remove the brake fluid cover and the brake fluid tank can be seen.



E2568185E6EE

3. Pry open the tank cover. Pour in the fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any oil overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled oil may cause damage to the compartment components.

Only use brake fluid that meets specifications.

4. After filling, restore the brake fluid cover.

WARNING

- › Insufficient brake fluid levels can compromise brake performance and increase the risk of an accident.
- › Brake fluid is harmful to the human body and corrosive. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water. If you ingest it, go to a hospital immediately.

Engine/drive motor coolant

For checking and adding the coolant, it is necessary to remove the cover plate inside the engine compartment. Relevant professional skills are required for the removal operation. We recommend that you do not remove it by yourself unless it is necessary. Go to a authorised service centre for handling.

Check

The water level in the overflow tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the overflow tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the coolant level is below the minimum level marked, add coolant until the coolant level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the cooling system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

When the engine and drive motor cool down, slowly open the lid to let the pressure out.

If the coolant spills, clean it up immediately to prevent parts or paint from being damaged.

Only use coolant that meets the specifications.

CAUTION

- › The coolant contains ethylene glycol to lower its freezing point. Indiscriminate disposal may lead to water pollution.
- › Do not open the overflow tank cover when the engine compartment is at a high temperature. There may still be some pressure inside the cooling system. Opening it at this point may cause burns or other injuries when heated coolant spurts out.
- › When changing the engine coolant and the drive motor coolant, contact a authorised service centre.

Engine compartment

Windscreen washer fluid

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in washer fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any washer fluid overflow must be removed immediately.

You should use quality washer fluid for better cleaning capabilities and for anti-freeze protection in cold season.

NOTICE

You should use the detergent with enough anti-freeze performance, if the ambient temperature is lower than 0 °C.

The detergent should be placed out of the reach of children to avoid accidental ingestion.

The detergent is flammable and should be stored far from fire.

CAUTION

Please do not top up liquids such as soapy water into the tank in place of the detergent. Otherwise, the paint on vehicle body may be damaged.

WARNING

Do not top up washing fluid when the engine is at a high temperature, or when the engine is running. This is because the washing fluid contains alcohol. Spilling the fluid on the engine carries a risk of fire.

Radiator and fan

Regularly check the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components in the engine compartment. If a component is particularly dirty or has foreign objects, please clean it in time. When you cannot determine whether it is working normally, please send your vehicle to a authorised service centre for checking.

Please timely check whether the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components are covered with dirt when the vehicle is driving in a bad environment (such as driving through water, sand and mud) each time. If they are covered by dirt, please go to a authorised service centre for inspection and cleaning timely.

Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Please head to authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

High voltage warning label

⚠ WARNING

All parts of the vehicle where the high-voltage warning labels are attached shall only be operated by professionals.

Any person must not use fingers, tools, decorations or other metal objects to approach or touch the parts where the high-voltage warning signs are pasted.

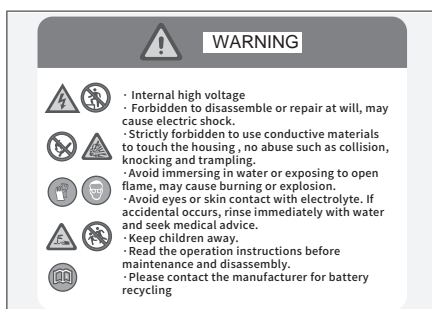
The gas leaked or escaped from the power battery pack may be toxic or flammable. Stay away from the vehicle in the event of an accident to avoid personal injury or even death.



B9864781D634

This sign is located on high-voltage parts to remind you of the following:

- › There is a high voltage inside this part.
- › Never disassemble, repair or replace the part without authorization, and pay attention to the relevant matters.
- › Do not touch high-voltage parts, otherwise, there may be a risk of electric shock.

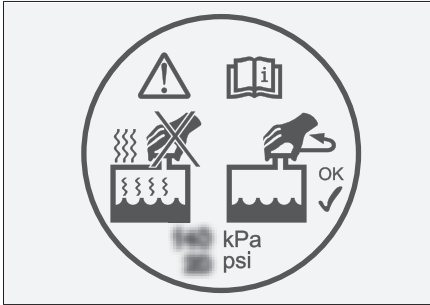


C6CE3024A70E

This sign is located on the power battery pack. Read and observe the warning sign carefully to avoid serious injury or even death.

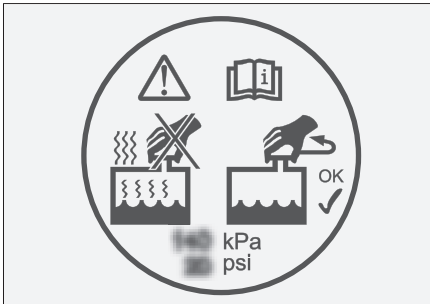
Safety labels and signs

Engine coolant warning label



The identifier is located on the overflow tank of the engine coolant. It serves to remind you to refrain from opening the overflow tank cover when the engine and the radiator are overheated. Otherwise, the hot liquid and steam be forced out under system pressure, causing burns.

Drive motor coolant warning label



7292828C8D61

The label is located on the overflow tank of the drive motor coolant . It serves to remind you to refrain from opening the overflow tank cover when the drive motor is overheated. Otherwise, the hot liquid and steam will be forced out under system pressure, causing burns.

Engine compartment warning label



8A2E03B87583

This label is located on the engine compartment front cover plate or the front grille trim plate to remind you of the following:

- › The type and filling amount of air conditioning refrigerant;
- › The specifications of the air conditioning lubricant;
- › The cooling fan may be started at any time. Do not put your hand into the fan shield. Otherwise, when the fan is started unexpectedly, serious personal injury may be caused.

⚠ WARNING

To ensure the safe operation of the vehicle, the air conditioning system is only allowed to be operated by qualified specialized persons.

Battery warning label

Type I



Type II



Type III



This label is located on the battery to inform you of the following precautions before installing, removing, or inspecting the battery:

- › Children should be kept away from the battery.
- › The battery may produce flammable gases in the use or charging process, so it should be away from high-temperature heat source and open flame. Otherwise a fire or explosion is likely to occur.
- › The battery contains corrosive liquid.
- › Take necessary protective measures such as wearing goggles during operation.

Part replacement

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Fuse

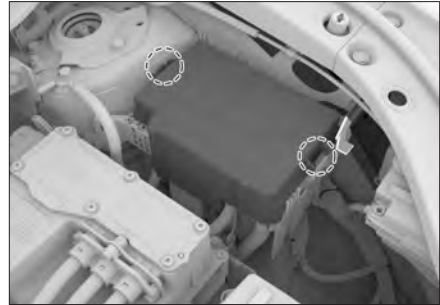
Before opening the fuse box cover in the engine compartment, it is necessary to remove the cover plate inside the engine compartment. Relevant professional skills are required for the removal operation. We recommend that you do not remove it by yourself unless it is necessary. Go to a authorised service centre for handling.

If any electrical components does not work, the fuse may have been blown out. In this case, it is recommended that inspections should be carried out based on the following operations and the fuses should be replaced if necessary:

1. Turn off all electrical components.
2. Switch the power supply to OFF mode, apply the parking brake, and disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

3. The fuses are located in the following positions:

> Located in the fuse box of the engine compartment



E26618961B10

Press and hold the two pawls at the fuse box cover, and then pull up the fuse box cover at the same time to open the fuse box.

> Located in the instrument panel near the steering wheel



4B1F17DFC371

The fuse can be seen by removing the storage box (fuse box cover) shown in the figure.

For the removal and installation of the storage box, see "Removal and installation of the instrument panel storage box". (> Page 300)

⚠ CAUTION

- › Bringing water or other liquids into the fuse box is forbidden, as this may damage the electrical components.
- › When installing the fuse box cover, make sure it is properly located on the fuse box. Otherwise, penetration of moisture or dirt will affect the use of fuses.

4. Use the fuse clips in the vehicle to pull out the fuses. Refer to the circuit information on the fuse box cover to find the fuse corresponding to the faulty appliance and check it.



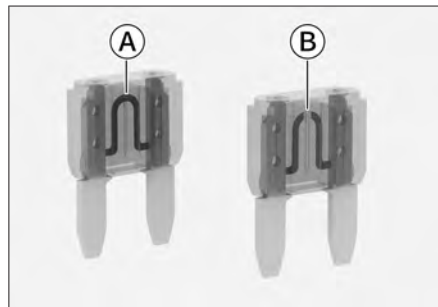
9C1AA03101B6

⚠ CAUTION

- › The fuse clip and the spare fuse are located in the engine compartment fuse box.
- › Fuse-related circuit information is attached to the fuse box cover, and the corresponding relationship between fuse and electrical components can be checked.

- › Since there may be more than one fuse causing the failure, it is needed to check all the fuses that may cause the failure before the failure disappears. If the failure cannot be eliminated in the end, contact a authorised service centre for handling.

5. Check the wire inside the fuse. If it is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse with the same specification.



6DC672024A26

- Ⓐ Normal fuse
- Ⓑ Blown fuse

⚠ WARNING

When replacing the fuse, it is forbidden to use the repaired or inconsistent fuse, otherwise a fire may occur due to circuit overload.

6. Check whether the electrical components return to normal operation.

Part replacement

⚠ CAUTION

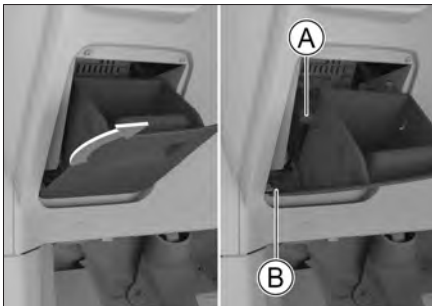
If the spare fuse with the same specification is blown out again in a short time or the electrical components do not return to normal operation, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical system failure. At this juncture, contact a authorised service centre for assistance in a timely manner.

Removal and installation of the instrument panel storage box

To check the fuses in the instrument panel, it is necessary to remove the instrument panel storage box. Refer to the following operations for removal:

Removal

1. Open the storage box and move it in the direction of the arrow shown to disengage the left retainer and the stop bolt from the instrument panel.



C930946FA675

- (A) Stop bolt
- (B) Left retainer

2. Move the storage box in the direction of the arrow shown and to disengage the right retainer and the stop bolt from the instrument panel to remove the storage box.



F2EDCBF4D9D4

Installation

First install the retainers on both sides of the storage box, and then push the storage box for closing to install the stop bolts.

Wiper blades

Replacing the front wiper blade

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

- › Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.
- › Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

⚠ CAUTION

When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Switch the power supply to OFF position. Pull the wiper control combination switch towards you, and hold it for about 3 s. Then, the wiper will automatically reach the maintenance position, as shown in the figure.



2. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

- › To lift the wiper, be sure to bring the wiper to the maintenance position. Otherwise, the wiper will be damaged.
- › Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.
- › Do not use the maintenance gear to lift the wiper arm in low temperature or icy/snowy weather to avoid damaging the wiper blades due to power supply mode switching and wiper return.

3. Rotate the wiper blade in the direction indicated to maximize the angle between it and the plastic connector.



4. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



- Ⓐ Wiper blade
- Ⓑ Locking tab

Press down the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

When the wiper blade is not installed, never place the wiper arm directly on the windscreen. Failure to do so will damage the windscreen.

Part replacement

5. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

For easy installation, please refer to step 3 to maximize the included angle between the wiper blade and the plastic connector.

After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

6. Reset the wiper to the initial state.
The wiper automatically resets to the initial state when the power supply mode is set to ON or the vehicle is started.

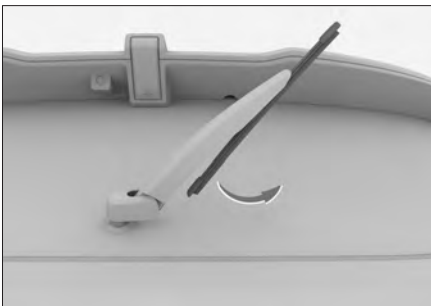
Replacing the rear wiper blade

1. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear wiper arm has a limited lift angle of about 45°. Do not over lift or use excessive force when lifting up, otherwise there is a risk of damage.

2. Pull the wiper blade in the direction shown until the blade is free from the wiper arm.



E87F750EF1A0

⚠ CAUTION

When the wiper blade is not installed, never place the wiper arm directly on the windscreen as it is capable of scratching the windscreen.

3. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

Lamp maintenance

Lamp calibration

The front combination lamps on a new vehicle have been calibrated at the factory. If you often carry heavy items in the vehicle, the front combination lamps may need to be recalibrated. The calibration of the front combination lamps should be done at the authorised service centre.

Replacing bulbs

All exterior lamps are LED lamps and cannot be disassembled separately or replaced individually. In case of bulb damage or malfunction, it is recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not modify external lighting and signalling devices.
- › Do not add external lighting and signalling devices which are not specified in the compulsory standards.

About lamps fogged

Under conditions such as driving or washing vehicle on a rainy day, there may be fog inside the lamp cover. This is caused by the temperature difference between the inner and outer air of the lamps and it is the same phenomenon as the window glass fogging on rainy days. It doesn't mean any problem in function. However, when a significant amount of water or water vapour accumulates inside the lamp cover, please contact the authorised service centre for assistance.

CAUTION

Do not use chemical solvents or strong cleaning agents to scrub the exterior lamp cover to avoid damage to the exterior lamp cover.

Vehicle maintenance

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Tyre maintenance

To ensure safe driving, make sure that the tyres used suit your vehicle in their models and sizes with a good tread pattern and appropriate tyre pressure.

WARNING

- › Do not use tyres that are excessively worn, damaged, under-inflated or over-inflated; otherwise, accidents and personal injury may occur.
- › You must abide by all manual instructions regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.
- › Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please handle it properly.

Tyre check

When checking tyre inflation state, you should also check whether there is external damage, foreign objects or excessive wear, etc.

If any of the following circumstances are found, replace the tyre as soon as possible:

- › There is damage and bulges on the tyre tread or sides.
- › There is excessive wear to the tyre tread.

Tyre pressure

Maintaining appropriate tyre pressure levels can maximize vehicle handling ability, tyre tread life and driving comfort.

Uneven wear of under-inflated tyres also impacts the handling of the vehicle and driving economy, and may cause tyres to go flat due to overheating.

Over-inflated tyres can lead to an uncomfortable ride as well as damage to the tyre due to uneven road surfaces, as well as uneven wear to the tyres.

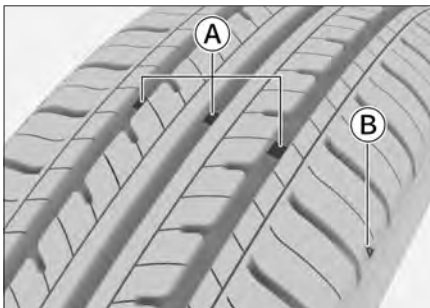
It is recommended that you check the tyre pressure regularly, .

Tyre pressure should be measured when the tyre is cold. The measurement conducted when the vehicle is parked for more than 3 hours or its driving distance is not more than 1.5 km will get more accurate data. If you check the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot (after driving for a few kilometres), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the cold-state reading. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyre to reach the prescribed cold-state pressure as this will lead to insufficient tyre pressure.

i NOTICE

Even if the tyres are in good condition, the tyre pressure may drop by 10 to 20 kPa every month. Please check them regularly.

Tyre wear



- Ⓐ Tyre wear mark
- Ⓑ Tyre wear mark position figure

i NOTICE

Tyre wear mark position figure is a schematic diagram, which is used for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

You must replace tyres as soon as possible once they have been worn to the maximum tolerable limit.

If you continue to use tyres with shallow treads or where the tyre wear mark has exposed, this will lead to situations such as longer braking distances, failure in steering and cracked tyres and possibly accidents.

If you find tyre wear uneven, or feel a certain continuous vibration when driving, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

When installing new tyres, perform dynamic tyre balance to ensure ride comfort and to prolong tyre use life.

Tyre rotation

In order to prolong the service life of tires and make them wear evenly, it is recommended that you check the tire pressure and wear at least once a month. If the tread depth differs by 1.5 mm or more, you should perform tire transposition once.

The tyre rotation should be done by the professionals and it is recommended to be done by the authorised service centre.

Vehicle maintenance

Wheel balance

Unbalanced wheels can affect vehicle control performance and tyre service life. Even under the normal use conditions, the wheels may lose their balance. Therefore, the wheels should be balanced according to the wheel dynamic balance parameters.

Avoid tyre flatness

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for an extended period of time, a slight deformation of the tyre in the contact position with the ground may occur, which is called "tyre flatness", which is normal. However, when the vehicle is running, the vehicle body and steering wheel may shake. As the mileage increases, the tyre will get hot and return to its original shape, and the shake will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for an extended period of time, the tyre flatness can be minimized by any of the following methods:

- › The tyre pressure can be increased (by about 300 kPa), which cannot be used for normal driving. Before driving, the tyre pressure must be restored to the recommended tyre pressure.
- › Vehicles must be moved at least once every 30 days (15 days best) and the movement must make the original force bearing point rotate at least 90°.

Sunroof maintenance

Daily maintenance frequency

The daily maintenance frequency depends on the driving condition and the use frequency of the sunroof.

If you are driving through sandy areas or areas with high rainfall levels, it is recommended that you increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

CAUTION

If the sunroof is not maintained on schedule, it can lead to sunroof leaks or abnormal noise. Adjust maintenance frequency depending on the conditions of use. For instance, in sandy zones or in seasons when there is higher usage, you should increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

Routine maintenance procedure

Dust and impurities may be concentrated in the sunroof seal strip, mechanical parts or rails, which may result in an abnormal sound or malfunction of the sunroof and also clog the drainage system. Regularly open the sunroof, remove dust and impurities, and use clean cloth and water to wipe the sunroof seal strip surface, as well as regularly apply grease on the mechanical parts for maintenance.

Open up the sunroof and check that the sunroof does not show signs of being obstructed in the course of operation. If there seems to be obstruction, please head to a authorised service centre for services.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When the sunroof malfunctions, please head to a authorised service centre as soon as possible for check and maintenance.
- › In cold icing conditions, do not try to forcibly open the sunroof to prevent damage to the sunroof motor and sunroof seals. You must wait for the interior temperature to rise and for seal strips of sunroof and sunroof opening to defrost before you try to open the sunroof.
- › Open the sunroof after washing the vehicle in cold icing conditions. Use a piece of soft, dry cloth to wipe dry seal strips of sunroof before driving.
- › The sunroof must be closed fully before the vehicle enters a car wash facility. Do not allow water jets to be pointed directly at seal strips of sunroof. Keep off the water from vehicle due to the deformation of the seal strip under the pressure of the high pressure water column, as a result, it may damage the seal strip.

- › When driving on bumpy roads or in hilly areas, do not open the sunroof fully for extended periods of time as the vibrations may cause damage to internal sunroof components.
- › In the rainy season, step up checks for any sand or dust on seal strips of sunroof, and remove them in a timely manner to ensure good sealing performance of sunroof.

Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

The battery is located under the luggage area cover plate.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Head to a authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Exterior maintenance

Vehicle wash

A regular vehicle wash helps to protect its appearance. Please regularly clean your vehicle.

Vehicle maintenance

i NOTICE

The longer such corrosive substances as insects, bird droppings, tree resins, road dust, industrial fallout, tar, soot, and snow melt salt remain on the body surface, the greater the damage to the body paint. High temperatures (for example, sun exposure) will further aggravate the corrosion effect.

To prevent damage to the vehicle paint, immediately remove corrosive substances on the body surface. Do not wait until your vehicle is due for a complete wash.

Wash your vehicle in a shady spot and not under direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, you must move the vehicle to a shady spot before cleaning, and wait until the body surface is cooled down.

Cleaning methods

1. Check that there are no fallen leaves, bird droppings, etc., on the vehicle body.

Remove these dirt, and then rinse immediately with clean water so as not to damage the vehicle body surface finish.

2. Wash the vehicle thoroughly with water to remove surface dust.

Clean your vehicle using water and a soft brush, a sponge, or a piece of soft cloth.

3. After washing and cleaning the vehicle, use a special leather or soft towel to dry off the vehicle. Do not allow the vehicle to dry out naturally as this may cause the vehicle body to lose its luster or generate water stains.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use acid, strong alkaline, strong chemical cleaning agents to wash the vehicle. Prolonged soaking by strong detergents will cause serious corrosion of the body paint and bright stripes, affecting the appearance of the vehicle.
- › After washing the vehicle or driving through flooded road, depress the brake pedal lightly to make sure that the brake is functioning normally.
- › When washing the vehicle in cold season, do not flush the gaps in the keyholes or doors, etc. to prevent the lock hole or the seal strip from freezing.
- › When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the fuel tank door and charging port cover to flush its inside.
- › Before washing the vehicle, be sure to raise the windows completely and do not flush it with the high-pressure water against the glass edge. The high-pressure water flow may warp the seals, making the seals unable to prevent the water from entering the cabin.

Waxing

Waxing is conducive to vehicle maintenance, and the vehicle must be thoroughly cleaned before waxing to ensure the effect of waxing.

There are many types of car wax available on the market, each with different properties, so choose carefully. Using the wrong wax could cause paint discolouration rather than protecting the vehicle's body.

Under normal circumstances, you should consider the purpose and properties of the car wax, the age of the vehicle, the paint colour, and the driving environment when choosing a wax. For details, contact the authorised service centre or professionals.

Repairing paint surfaces

Always check whether there are any paint peeled off or scratches on the vehicle body surface. If such a phenomenon occurs, repair the surface immediately to prevent corrosion of the metal in the damaged area.

Repair paint can only be used to repair small areas of peeled-off paint or scratches. Large areas of peeled-off paint should be repaired by professionals.

Maintenance of matte lacquer finish

If your vehicle is equipped with matte paint, please note the following during maintenance and use of the vehicle:

- › Never use automatic vehicle washing equipment with hard brushes to clean the vehicle. Hard brushes can damage the paint surface. It is recommended to use a soft sponge, neutral cleaning agents and plenty of water to manually clean the vehicle.
- › When cleaning the body, use a gentle wiping and washing method to avoid excessive force or friction on the body; otherwise, the matte effect will be changed, and the gloss of the body will be uneven.
- › Frequent vehicle washes for a long time will cause the paint gloss to increase or uneven.
- › Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- › Please do not use paint cleaning agents, sanding materials, or polishing products such as polishing wax to treat the paint surface. Failure to do so will damage the paint surface.
- › If you accidentally apply the vehicle wax to the paint surface, please remove it immediately with silicone resin remover, and use gentle force to avoid excessive force during operation.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Avoid resin, grease and other lipids in contact with the paint, as this can leave marks.
- › Use asphalt remover to remove tar stains on the vehicle body.
- › Remove insects and bird droppings and other dirt on the body in time. Use water to soft them before cleaning, or wash them carefully with a high-pressure water gun. If this kind of dirt has firmly adhered to the body, you can spray shellac remover before cleaning.

Liquid leakage check

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to check for fuel, oil or other liquid leaks under the vehicle before each driving. In case of the apparent leakage, contact the authorised service centre for service.

Cavity anti-corrosion wax instructions

Cavity wax injection anti-corrosion technology is applied to the inner cavities of vehicle doors, bonnets, sill beams, and other parts. This technology effectively isolates water and corrosive substances from metal, enhancing the vehicle's durability and corrosion resistance, and extending its service life.

When the vehicle is driving on a high temperature or severely bumpy road, it's normal for excess yellow waxes in the cavity to flow out through the water hole. You can use hot water plus the proper amount of commercially available cleaning agent to wipe and rinse them.

Interior maintenance

WARNING

Cleaning agents may contain harmful substances that could cause injuries. For cleaning the interior, it is recommended to open the doors or windows. Use only cleaning agents that are made for vehicle cleaning and follow the instructions on the package.

NOTICE

- › Do not allow water or any liquid come into contact with instrument panel, floor or electrical components when cleaning the interior as water will damage those components.
- › Do not clean the vehicle floor with water to avoid vehicle body corrosion.

Carpets

Regularly clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner. Allowing dirt to remain on carpets will increase wear on them.

Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition. Use a foaming detergent to clean carpets. To keep carpets as dry as possible, do not add water to the foaming detergent.

Textile

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from the textile.

If the textile becomes contaminated, clean it promptly to prevent the stains from spreading. Use the following methods to gently remove as much of the stains as possible, depending on its condition.

For liquid stains, gently blot the stains with a paper towel to absorb as much of the stains as possible.

For solid dry stains, first remove as much of the residue as possible, and then use a vacuum cleaner to clean up the remaining stains.

Based on the cleaning progress of the stains, please use the following methods for further cleaning:

1. Soak a clean white cotton cloth that will not shed lint with water.
2. Screw the cotton cloth to half dry (no dripping is advisable).
3. Gently scrub from the edge of the stains towards the centre until no more dirt transfers to the cotton.
4. Dry naturally.

NOTICE

For stubborn stains, use mild, neutral soapy water or a fabric-specific detergent. Be sure to follow the detergent's instructions. After cleaning, repeat the steps to rinse off any excess soapy water or detergent, and allow the fabric to dry naturally.

CAUTION

- › Avoid using sharp objects to scrape or rub surface dirt, as this may damage the fabric.
- › Do not use strong solvents such as glass cleaner.
- › Oil and other stubborn stains can be challenging to fully remove, so be sure to take precautions to protect the fabric.

Leather

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt, especially from creases and seams.

Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with water, and then buff it up with another soft dry cloth. Use a leather cleaner for deeper cleaning.

Vehicle maintenance

Wipe off the leather cleaner with a soft dry cloth as soon as possible after cleaning with the leather cleaner. Do not leave a cloth with leather cleaner on any part of the interior trim for a long time. Some leather cleaners may cause the resin or fibres of the interior trim textile to discolour or break.

Do not use liquid containing organic substances like alcohol to clean leather; do not use petrol, acidic solution or alkaline solution to clean leather.

Do not use brushes, hard sponges and other tools with rough surfaces when cleaning.

Do not use silicone or gel cushions on leather surfaces, as they can cause the leather to harden and crack.

Suedette

Always use a soft brush, a piece of dry cloth or a vacuum cleaner to remove dust from the suedette surface.

If the suedette surface becomes stained, the following operating instructions should be observed:

- › Before removing the stain, first remove any matter adhering to the stain. If the stain on the surface is thick (yoghurt, jam, etc.), use a spoon or a cardboard to remove it; if it is a liquid stain, use white absorbent paper or a sponge.
- › Use a clean and dry white rag or wrung out sponge for wiping.

- › When cleaning the suedette surface, do not allow the surface to get too wet. If necessary, wash a rag or a sponge several times during wiping.
- › Remove local stains immediately. To avoid spreading the stain further, wipe the stain from its edge to its centre.
- › Do not wipe the stain hard, as this can cause it to spread or penetrate deeper into the material.
- › When using a special cleaner, do not pour the cleaner directly onto the suedette surface.
Do not use alkaline or alcoholic solvent cleaners.
- › Once the suedette has dried completely its surface can be restored to its original state by brushing it lightly with a soft brush.

Rubber parts

Exposure to the environment may cause the surface of rubber parts to become soiled and lose their shine. Rubber parts should be cleaned regularly with rubber conditioners, especially worn rubber parts.

To prevent damage and reduce noise, avoid using conditioners that contain silicone for routine maintenance of rubber seals. Instead, clean them with water or a suitable conditioner.

Plastic parts

i NOTICE

Liquids containing alcohol or solvents (such as nitro thinner, cooling cleaner, fuel, perfume and cosmetics) can damage the surface of plastic parts. Clean them with a soft microfibre cloth (slightly moistened with water).

Plastic parts include but are not limited to the following: vehicle light glass shade, vent assembly and inside painted parts.

Windows

Clean the inside and outside of windows with glass cleaner and dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

⚠ CAUTION

If a heating wire is attached to the inside of the rear window, excessive wiping may cause it to move or break. Therefore, wipe lightly along the direction of the heating wire.

Seat belts

- › Use mild warm soapy water to clean soiled seat belts. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents. Such products may reduce the durability of seat belts.

Allow the seat belt to dry naturally in the air before driving.

- › Too much dust accumulated inside the seat belt guide ring will cause the seat belt to retract more slowly. Scrub the inner side of the guide ring with mild warm soapy water.

Anti-corrosion measures

Factors that affect the corrosion rate

- › The accumulation of dirt, dust, or snow in the lower part of the vehicle body can accelerate corrosion.
- › Damage to the coating or other protective layer, arising from sand attacking or minor accident, may quicken corrosion.
- › If the vehicle runs in areas where relative humidity is high or temperature is above freezing point, it may quicken corrosion.
- › There is much salinity in the air and salt on the road of industrial pollution areas and coastal regions, which may quicken the paint corrosion.
- › Rising temperature may quicken the corrosion of poorly ventilated parts.

Protecting the vehicle from corrosion

- › Park the vehicle in a well-ventilated and dry place.
- › Regularly use clean cold water and neutral vehicle detergent to wash the vehicle so as to keep it clean.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Regularly check whether the paint is damaged. If damaged, repair it as soon as possible.
- › Regularly check the lower part of the vehicle body. If there is sand, dirt, snow, ice or other coverings, clean them with water as soon as possible.
- › Check the interior of the vehicle frequently to ensure that the carpet is dry and clean.
When transporting chemicals, cleaning agents, fertilizers, salt, etc., take special care and use appropriate containers for transportation. If splashes or leaks are found, clean them immediately and keep them dry.
- › Keep the door drain hole open so as to avoid water logging.
- › If bird droppings, resin, insect carcasses, asphalt, cement, industrial dust, coal tar, gasoline, benzene or other similar objects are accumulated on the body surface, clean them as soon as possible.
- › If you always drive on a deicing salt covered road, saline-alkali land, sea-side and other roads containing salt, please wash off the attachments at the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and take special maintenance measures, such as chassis armour.
- › If you drive regularly on sand road, please consider installing mudguard behind the wheels.

Long-term storage of the vehicle

The parking position of the vehicle should help to prevent deterioration of the vehicle condition and facilitate the restarting of the vehicle. If possible, park your vehicle indoor.

If you need to store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), take the following steps beforehand:


- › Clean and dry the vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- › Clean the inside of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- › Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- › Open vehicle windows on one side slightly (if the vehicle is to be parked indoors).
- › Use a folded towel or a piece of cloth to cushion the wiper blade from the windscreen glass.
- › To reduce the risk of sticking, silicone lubricant should be applied on all door seals.
- › Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle, because non-porous materials such as plastic will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.
- › Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

- › The vehicle shall be stored in a ventilated environment, without flammable and explosive materials around.
- › In order to prolong the service life of the traction battery, it is recommended that the traction battery power should be kept at 40% to 60% when the vehicle is stored for more than 7 days.

When the vehicle is stored for more than 3 months without use, the traction battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40% to 60% by driving every 4 months, which will prolong the service life of the traction battery.

- › When the traction battery is stored for less than 3 months, the ambient temperature should be between -20°C and 45°C; when it is stored for less than 6 months, the ambient temperature should be between 0°C and 45°C; when it is stored for more than 6 months, the ambient temperature should be between 0°C and 35°C.
- › Long-term low battery power storage may cause the traction battery over-discharge, thus leading to performance degradation or even damage of the traction battery.

i NOTICE

It is recommended that you should check the traction battery power every month. If the  low traction battery power indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on, charge the battery immediately.

Environmental protection information

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Power battery recovery

For the replacement and disposal of the power battery, please always consult a authorised service centre and get the recovery requirements. Discarding the power battery at will may pollute the environment or cause safety accidents.


WARNING

- › Never sell, transfer or modify the power battery.
If the power battery is used outside the vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, burn, smoke, electrolyte leakage and explosion may occur.
- › Do not dispose of the power battery by yourself. Otherwise, it will pollute the environment and electric shock may occur.

- › To ensure your safety, do not open or modify the power battery pack under any circumstances. If the power battery needs to be repaired, disassembled, replaced and scrapped, it shall be handed over to the authorised service centre for disposal.


Disposal of batteries and electronic equipment

Disposal of batteries

Used batteries (e.g. vehicle batteries and batteries built into devices like remote control keys and emergency call systems) must not be disposed of as domestic waste. The symbol  is a reminder of this.

According to local laws, such used batteries can be given to a local qualified recycling station.

Disposal of electronic equipment

The used electronic equipment marked with  (e.g. SD cards for navigation systems or radio remote controls) must be collected separately from general household waste and disposed of in accordance with the regulations.

According to local laws, such used electronic equipment can be given to a local qualified recycling station.

i NOTICE

- › Before disposing of used electronic equipment, be sure to delete any personal data that may be stored on the equipment.
- › Batteries contained in used electronic equipment must be removed and disposed of separately as batteries beforehand.

Vehicle recycling and scrapping

Vehicle recycling

Regulations regarding the vehicle recycling have been formulated to protect the environment. For more information on vehicle recycling, contact your local authorised service centre.

- › A recycling company can recycle vehicles that comply with the relevant national regulations free of charge.
- › A recycling certificate will be then issued to show that the scrapped vehicle is recycled in accordance with the regulations and meets environmental requirements.

Vehicle scrapping

When scrapping a vehicle or one of its components (such as the airbag system and the seat belt pretensioner), ensure that the relevant safety regulations are observed. For more information, consult an authorised authorised service centre.

7

Technical data

Vehicle identification..... 320

Overall parameters 322

Vehicle identification

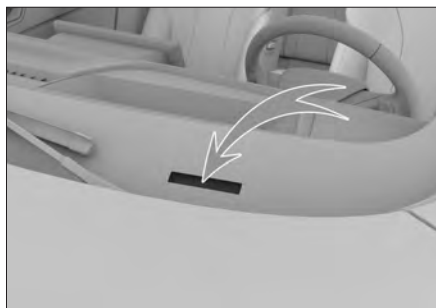
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the identity code of the vehicle and unique to every vehicle. It is marked in the following locations:

- › On the upper plate assembly of the lower beam of the front windscreen;



F8CA020453FB

- › On front mounting beam of the front right seat;



88C6B9C46A01

- › On the vehicle nameplate below the central pillar lock.



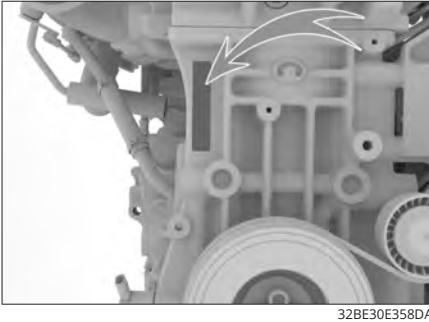
301A84CFF607

i NOTICE

After using the diagnostic tool to connect the on-board diagnosis connector, you can read the vehicle identification number in the electronic control unit (ECU).

Engine number

Engine number (E20N)



The engine number is engraved on the engine block, as shown in the figure.

i NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached on the top of the rear of the engine cylinder head cover.

Overall parameters

Basic parameters

For basic parameters such as the overall dimensions, quality, fuel consumption, emission standard, maximum speed, see the official vehicle documents attached to the vehicle.

CAUTION

Unless specifically stated or separately listed parameters, all the parameters listed in this manual are applicable to the standard vehicles. For specially equipped vehicles and those vehicles produced for other countries, some of the parameters may be different. Parameters in the official vehicle documents attached to the vehicle shall always prevail.

Power parameters

Engine

Model	Type	Maximum net power/speed [KW/rpm]	Maximum net torque/speed [N·m/rpm]	Maximum gradeability [%]
E20N	Turbocharged gasoline engine	150/6000 to 6300	320/1500 to 4000	32 (2WD) 59 (4WD)

Drive motor

Model	Type	Rated power/speed/torque [kw/rpm/N·m]	Peak power/speed/torque [kw/rpm/N·m]
TZ270XY001	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	60/3000/150	120/7000/325
TZ180XS004	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	47/4800/93	135/12500/232

Traction battery

Model	Type	Nominal voltage [V]	Nominal capacity [Ah]	Operating temperature [°C]
PE309110B	Ternary lithium ion battery	309.12	110	-30 to 55

Overall parameters

Model	Type	Nominal voltage [V]	Nominal capacity [Ah]	Operating temperature [°C]
PE309110C	Ternary lithium ion battery	309.12	110	-30 to 55
PE311114C	Ternary lithium ion battery	310.8	110	-30 to 55
PE311114D	Ternary lithium ion battery	310.8	110	-30 to 55

Tyre specifications

Item		Data
Specifications	Standard tyres	235/55 R19 101V, 235/55 R19 105H, 235/50 R20 100V, 235/50 R20 104W
Tyre pressure		Please refer to the tyre pressure label on the central pillar
Tyre chains	Specifications	Steel tyre chains with the thickness not above 12 mm or TPU polyurethane tyre chains with the thickness not above 15 mm (applicable for tyres 235/55 R19) Steel tyre chains with the thickness not above 9 mm (applicable for tyres 235/50 R20)
	Installation location	Front wheels

Wheel parameters

Item		Data
Dynamic balance parameters	Unilateral [g]	≤ 8
	Bilateral sum [g]	≤ 15

Overall parameters

Item			Data
Alignment parameters	Rear wheels	Rear wheel camber	$-72' \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$)
		Rear wheel toe-in	$10' \pm 10'$ (left and right difference $\leq 10'$)
	Front wheels	Kingpin backwards inclination	$6.92^\circ \pm 0.75^\circ$ (left and right difference $\leq 0.75^\circ$)
		Front-wheel camber	$0' \pm 45'$ (left and right difference $\leq 45'$)
		Front wheel toe-in (uni-lateral)	$0' \pm 5'$ (left and right difference $\leq 5'$)
		Kingpin in-wards inclination	12.44° (reference value)

Brake parameters

Item		Data
Brake pedal	Free travel [mm]	5 to 8
Front brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Rear brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Front brake disk	Minimum thickness [mm]	28
Rear brake disk	Minimum thickness [mm]	18

Fluid parameters

Engine oil

Specifications of E20N engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, we recommend that customers use the SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, we recommend you to use the following engine oil:

Overall parameters

- › If you choose API (American Petroleum Institute) standard oils, we recommend you to use SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil with medium-low ash content.
- › If you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oils, we recommend you to use C5 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil.

Engine oil capacity

Engine model	Capacity [L] (reference value)	
	When changing both the oil and the oil filter element	When only changing the oil
E20N	5.0 ± 0.1	4.7 ± 0.1

Other types of fluids

Fluid type	Specifications	Capacity [L] (reference value)
Automatic transmission oil	DCTF 9	5.1 ± 0.1 (recommended filling amount for maintenance)
Rear axle reducer oil	GL-4 75W	0.95 ± 0.02
Coolant (engine system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (alpine regions)	11 ± 0.5
Coolant (new energy system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (alpine regions)	7.7 ± 0.5 (2WD) 8.3 ± 0.5 (4WD)
Windscreen washer fluid	--	4.5 ± 0.2
Brake fluid	DOT4 synthetic brake fluid	0.82 ± 0.08

NOTICE

The above oil capacity is the design value. The actual filling amount may slightly vary with products, equipment and climate factors.

8

Index

Alphabetical index..... 328

Alphabetical index

A

A/C system

Cabin cleaning system 83

Airbag

Curtain airbags 246

Far-end side airbag 247

Front airbags 243

Side airbag 246

Anti-lock brake system 182

Automatic transmission

Electronic gear shifter 121

B

Battery 294,307

Bottle holder 89

Brake fluid 292

Braking force assist system 183

Break-in period 108

C

Catalytic converter 186

Child restraint system 252

Fixing points for child seat 250

Child safety lock 30

Crankcase emission control unit 187

D

Data privacy and protection 264

Disposal of batteries and electronic equipment 316

Door lock

Door lock settings 20

Keyless lock and unlock 21

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons 22

Locking and unlocking with key buttons 22

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key 23

Locking during emergencies 23

Unlocking with the interior handle 22

Drive motor coolant 293

Driving mode 126

Dynamic directional stability auxiliary system 184

E

Electric power assisted steering mode 135

Electronic braking force distribution system 183

Electronic parking brake 118

Electronic Power Steering System 184

Electronic stability control system 184

Emergency braking warning 73

Emergency call system 283

Emergency shut-off system 261

Emergency tyre repair 270

Engine compartment 289

Engine coolant 293

Engine oil 291

Engine overheating 277

Event data recorder 262

Exterior maintenance 307

F

Fatigue driving warning system 177

Fluid level 290

Fluid parameters 324

Fuse 298

G

Gasoline particulate filter 188

H

- Head-up display 190
- HHC (Hill-start hold control) 183
- Hill descent control system 181
- Hood 40
- Horn 64
- How to jumpstart the vehicle 275

I

- Inflator and tyre repair fluid 269
- Inside rearview mirror
 - Automatic anti-glare inside rearview mirror 61
- Instrument
 - Virtual instrument 192
- Instrument panel
 - Indicator lights 196
 - Warning lights 196
- Intelligent monitoring system 179
- Interior maintenance 310

K

- Key 16

L

- Light control
 - Daytime running light 72
 - Emergency flasher 71
 - Interior lamp 73
 - Leaving light 72
 - Light control combination switch 68
 - Light height adjustment 73
 - Side roof light 74
- Lights control
 - Front fog lights auxiliary lighting 72
- Luggage cover 90

O

- On-board diagnostic system 187
- Opening and closing windows 31
- Oxygen sensor 186

P

- Parking assist system
 - Around view monitor (AVM) 139
 - Collision avoidance radar 138
 - Intelligent integrated parking system 141
 - Parking settings 145
 - Track-back reverse 144
- Power battery recovery 316
- Power management system 206
- Power parameters 322
- Power supply socket 91
- Power supply switch 115

R

- Radiator and fan 294
- Refuelling 42
- Rollover prevention system 183
- Roof rack 66

S

- Seat 52
 - Rear seat 57
- Seat belt 237
- Secondary collision mitigation system 183
- Side mirrors 61
- Sound prompt system 136
- Starting and turning off the vehicle 116
- Steering wheel 64
- Sunroof
 - Opening and closing the sunroof 35
 - Opening/closing of sunshade 36

Alphabetical index

Sunroof maintenance 306

Sun visor 87

T

Tailgate

Electric hands-free tailgate 26

Electric tailgate 24

Emergency unlock 29

Traction control system 183

Trailer towing 128

Turbocharger 187

Tyre inflation 271

Tyre maintenance 304

Tyre pressure monitoring system 175

V

Vanity mirror 87

Vehicle anti-theft system 257

Vehicle charging 46

Vehicle identification number 320

Vehicle recycling and scrapping 317

VMDR biometric identification 259

Voice assistant 233

Voice prompt system 136

W

Windscreen washer fluid 294

Wiper control

Auto wiper 75

Front windshield washer nozzle heating function 78

Front wiper heating function 78

Wireless charging of mobile phone 85

